

English for Life

Pre-intermediate

Student's Book

Tom Hutchinson

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS



Contents

VOCABULARY

- Lessons 1-4 ▶ **1** Introductions and nationalities
Getting started *Whereabouts?*
- Lessons 5-8 ▶ **5** Jobs: *a plumber, a studio, repair things*, etc.
Work *Word building 1: I drive a lorry. I'm a lorry driver*, etc.
- Lessons 9-12 ▶ **9** Collocations: *do the ironing, make the bed, have breakfast*, etc.
Routines and lifestyle *Pronunciation: Stress in expressions*
- Lessons 13-16 ▶ **13** Life events: *grow up, fall in love, get married*, etc.
Life stories *Years: 1969, 2005*, etc.
English in the world: Going to university
- Lessons 17-20 ▶ **17** At the station: *the fare, a local train, first class*, etc.
Travel and transport *Pronunciation: Word stress 2*
- Lessons 21-24 ▶ **21** Directions and locations: *along the street, over the bridge*,
Locations *at the top of the hill*
and events *Pronunciation: of short form*
- Lessons 25-28 ▶ **25** The world: *Asia, The Atlantic, Mount Everest*, etc.
Seeing the world *Articles with geographical names*
Pronunciation: Word stress 3
- Lessons 29-32 ▶ **29** Describing people: *tall, middle-aged, slim*, etc.
Describing people and things *Modifiers: quite, not very*, etc.
English in the world: Tactful language
- Lessons 33-36 ▶ **33** TV programmes: *a documentary, a sitcom*, etc.
TV and the news *Word building 2: a music programme*
English in the world: TV channels
- Lessons 37-40 ▶ **37** Health problems: *My arm itches, I've got a rash*, etc.
Health matters *Possessive adjectives*
- Lessons 41-44 ▶ **41** Cooking: *a saucepan, roast, slice*, etc.
Food *Verbs and adjectives: fried, boiled*, etc.
English in the world: Eating
- Lessons 45-48 ▶ **45** Shops: *an estate agent's, a hardware shop*, etc.
Shopping *Word building 3: a stationery shop*
Pronunciation: Silent letters
- Lessons 49-52 ▶ **49** Money: *a cheque, a PIN number*, etc.
Money *pay (for/by); lend/borrow*
English in the world: Cash machines
- Lessons 53-56 ▶ **53** Activities: *scuba-diving, doing DIY*, etc.
Holidays and free time *-ing*
- Lessons 57-60 ▶ **57** In the office: *a printer, a filing cabinet*, etc.
Working life *Office activities: send an email, have a break*, etc.
- Lessons 61-64 ▶ **61** In the home: *a kettle, a clock radio*, etc.
Home life *Subject/object questions*
- Lessons 65-68 ▶ **65** Materials: *plastic, wool, metal*, etc.
Describing things and events *Word building 4: a leather belt*, etc.
Pronunciation: Sentence stress
- Lessons 69-72 ▶ **69** Computers: *an icon, an attachment*, etc.
Computers *English in the world: Website addresses*
- Lessons 73-76 ▶ **73** Phrasal verbs: *put on, break down*, etc.
Seeing old friends
- Lessons 77-80 ▶ **77** Feelings: *relaxed, worried, tired*, etc.
Feelings *-ed/-ing adjectives*

GRAMMAR

- 2** Question forms: *be, have got, do*
Pronunciation: The phonemic alphabet
- 6** Present simple
- 10** Past simple statements
to be
- 14** Past simple: questions and short answers
- 18** Present continuous
Present continuous and present simple
- 22** Past continuous
- 26** *going to*: statements, questions, and short answers
- 30** Adjectives and adverbs
Verb + adjective: be, look, taste, sound
- 34** Present perfect: statements, questions, and short answers
Experiences: ever/never
- 38** Present perfect and past simple
- 42** Quantity: *some, any, much, a few*, etc.
Quantity expressions: a slice of, etc.
- 46** Comparatives and superlatives
- 50** Future with *will*
- 54** First conditional
when
Pronunciation: won't and want
- 58** Obligation: *must, have to, mustn't, don't have to*
Pronunciation: must/mustn't
- 62** Advice: *should/shouldn't*
English in the world: Warning signs
- 66** Passives
- 70** Relative clauses
- 74** Present perfect; *for* and *since*
Pronunciation: Vowel sounds
- 78** *would*: second conditional



SKILLS

- 3** Listen and speak: Registering at a language school
Giving your date of birth
English in the world: Saying email addresses
- 7** Read and speak: *My job*
Adverbs of frequency
English in the world: 24/7
- 11** Listen and write: A story
because and *so*
English in the world: Moving house
- 15** Read and speak: A biography
Infinitive of purpose
- 19** Listen and speak: In a taxi
want, like, need
English in the world: Transport signs
- 23** Read and write: An unusual event
Past continuous and past simple: *when, while*
- 27** Listen and write: A round-the-world race
Large numbers
English in the world: Races
- 31** Read and write: A personality quiz
Expressing likes and dislikes: *love, don't mind, etc.* + *ing*
- 35** Listen and write: *The news*
Present perfect with present result
Pronunciation: The letter *o*
- 39** Read and write: Advice for travellers
Giving advice
Pronunciation: Plural -*es* endings
- 43** Read and speak: A diet
but and *however*
Pronunciation: The letter *i*
- 47** Listen and write: *Where do you normally shop?*
not as ... as
- 51** Read and speak: *What will the future be like?*
Expressing opinions 2: *I think / don't think ...*
Pronunciation: Sentence stress
- 55** Read and speak: Holidays
Time clauses: *when, before, after, while*
- 59** Listen and speak: Commuters
Time expressions: *an hour and a half, etc.*
English in the world: Rush hour
- 63** Read and write: *I promise to love, honour, and wash up*
Expressing opinions 3
- 67** Listen and write: Festivals
English in the world: Greetings cards
- 71** Read and write: *Love online*
- 75** Listen and speak: A university reunion
English in the world: Reunions
- 79** Read and speak: Happiness
Time expressions: *at first, in the end, etc.*
Pronunciation: How many syllables?
- 4** Story: That's Life! Episode 1 *Russell returns*
Asking about people
- 8** Making appointments: Dates and times
Prepositions of time: *in, on, at*
Pronunciation: Word stress 1
- 12** Story: That's Life! Episode 2 *Money problems*
Responding to information
- 16** Responding to news
Pronunciation: Intonation
- 20** Story: That's Life! Episode 3 *The woman with a camera*
Offering and asking for help
- 24** Giving directions: *traffic lights, a roundabout, a junction, etc.*
English in the world: Speed limits
- 28** Story: That's Life! Episode 4 *I've got some news!*
Expressing doubt
- 32** At the shops: prices and descriptions
one / ones
Pronunciation: Sentence stress
- 36** Story: That's Life! Episode 5 *Jordan's party*
Expressing opinions 1
- 40** At the doctor's
English in the world: Health services
- 44** Story: That's Life! Episode 6 *I don't believe it!*
Expressing annoyance
- 48** In a clothes shop: *Can I try this shirt on, please?*
too / enough
English in the world: Bargains
- 52** Story: That's Life! Episode 7 *Decision time*
Talking about money problems
- 56** Booking a hotel room
English in the world: Hotel signs
- 60** Story: That's Life! Episode 8 *The email*
Greeting a visitor
- 64** Describing faults: *It's damaged, etc.*
Dealing with faults
Pronunciation: Negative auxiliary verbs
- 68** Story: That's Life! Episode 9 *We must stop her!*
Responding to information
- 72** Asking what things are called
Definitions
Pronunciation: /s/ or /z/
- 76** Story: That's Life! Episode 10 *It's too late!*
Telephoning
- 80** A thank-you note
Saying thank you
English in the world: Parties

1

VOCABULARY Introductions and nationalities

1a 1.1 Read and listen. Where are Michael and Zofia from?



Michael Hi. My name's Michael.

Zofia Pleased to meet you, Michael. I'm Zofia.

Michael Sorry. What's your name again?

Zofia It's Zofia - Z-O-F-I-A.

Michael Oh, OK. Nice to meet you, Zofia.

Zofia Where are you from, Michael?

Michael I'm from Canada. And you?

Zofia I'm from Poland.

Michael Oh, really? Whereabouts?

Zofia Krakow. Do you know it?

Michael Yes, I do. I was there last year with my wife.

b Work with a partner. Practise the conversation.

Whereabouts?

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| A Where are you from? | A Where is she from? |
| B I'm from Italy. | B She's from New York. |
| A Whereabouts? | A Whereabouts? |
| B (I'm from) Rome. | B (She's from) Brooklyn. |

Whereabouts? means 'Where exactly?'

2 1.2 Listen. Michael introduces a woman to Zofia. Choose the correct answers.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 She's | 2 Her name is | 3 She's |
| a his boss. | a Mia. | a Polish. |
| b his wife. | b Soshi. | b Canadian. |
| c his girlfriend. | c Olivia. | c Chinese. |

3 **You're** Greet some people in your class. Use the conversation in exercise 1.

4a Write the countries.

Country		Nationality
<u>Poland</u>		Polish
<u>Canada</u>		Canadian
_____		Chinese
_____		Brazilian
_____		Irish
_____		Greek
_____		Russian
_____		American
_____		French
_____		Egyptian
_____		Japanese
_____		Spanish

b 1.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

5 1.4 Drill. Listen. Say the nationalities.

- 1 Hello. I'm Felipe. I'm from Brazil.
His name's Felipe. He's Brazilian.



1 Felipe



2 Effie



3 Akira



4 Kate



5 Ahmed



6 Olga

6 **Your life** Work in a group of three. Introduce each other. Follow the pattern.

- A Hi, Niran. This is my friend, Judit.
B Pleased to meet you. Sorry. What's your name again?
C It's Judit. Nice to meet you, too.
A Niran's from Thailand.
C Oh, really?
B What about you, Judit? Where are you from?
C I'm from Hungary.
B Oh, that's interesting.



2 GRAMMAR

1a Complete the questions. Choose the correct words.

Who are you?



Name _____ Answer _____

- 1 Where *am/is/are* you from?
- 2 What '*m/s/re*' your last name?
- 3 *Am/Are/Is* you married?
- 4 When *have/is/are* your birthday?
- 5 Where *are/was/were* you born?
- 6 *Have/Has/Do* you got any brothers and sisters?
- 7 *Has/Have/Do* you got a car?
- 8 *Are/Do/Does* you live near here?
- 9 What *are/do/does* you do?
- 10 What *do/are/have* you do in your free time?

b **2.1** Listen and check.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 103.

Question forms: be, have got, do

Are you from France?
Where are you from?
Have you got any children?
How many children have you got?
Do you live in Paris?
Where do you live?

3 **2.2** Drill. Listen. Say the question.

- 1 You're a student.
Are you a student?
- 2 You've got two children.
Have you got two children?

4 Ask a partner the questions in exercise 1. Write down his/her answers.

A Where are you from?

B I'm from ...

5a Change the questions to *he/she*. Write them down.

1 Where are you from?

→ Where is he/she from?

b Work with a new partner. Ask and answer about your first partners.

6 Writing Write a paragraph about yourself. Change the words in **bold**.

My name's **Maria** and I'm from **Italy**.
I'm **married** and my last name is **Valerio**.
I was born in **Naples** and my birthday is on **14 August**. I've got **two brothers** and **one sister**. I live **outside Naples** now with my **husband** and **two children**. I'm a **secretary** and I work in an office. At weekends, I go cycling with my family.

Pronunciation

The phonemic alphabet

1 **2.3** We use a phonemic alphabet to show pronunciation (see page 124).

	/sʌn/	/sʌn/
different letter,	sun	son
same sound:		
	/kʌm/	/həʊm/
same letter,	come	home
different sound:		

2a Choose the correct word to match the phonemic transcription.

- 1 /lʊk/ like look
- 2 /nəʊ/ know now
- 3 /wɪk/ week work
- 4 /mæn/ man men
- 5 /jʊ/ you your
- 6 /eɪt/ eat eight

b **2.4** Listen, check, and repeat.



Now I can ...
ask about and give personal information.

- 1 **3.1** Listen. Meryem is registering at a language school. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 She's *Turkish / Egyptian*.
- 2 She's a *doctor / chemist*.
- 3 She's *single / married*.
- 4 She *has / hasn't* got children.
- 5 Her address is in *Brighton / London*.
- 6 She gives a *mobile / daytime* phone number.



- 2a Use your answers to exercise 1. Complete those parts of the form.

Global Language School

Personal details

Title:	<input type="text" value="Ms"/>	Gender:	<input type="checkbox"/> Female <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Male
First name(s):	<input type="text"/>		
Surname:	<input type="text"/>	Date of birth:	<input type="text"/>
Nationality:	<input type="text"/>		
Occupation:	<input type="text"/>		
Marital status:	<input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed	No. of dependants:	<input type="text"/>

Contact details

Address	
House number:	<input type="text"/>
Town/City:	<input type="text"/>
Telephone/email	
Tel. no: (daytime)	<input type="text"/>
Mobile:	<input type="text"/>
Street:	<input type="text"/>
Postcode:	<input type="text"/>
(evening)	<input type="text"/>
Email:	<input type="text"/>

- 3 Match the 'official' terms with the questions.

- 1 Surname f
 - 2 Age —
 - 3 Nationality —
 - 4 Date of birth —
 - 5 Marital status —
 - 6 No. of dependants —
 - 7 Address —
 - 8 Occupation —
- a How old are you?
 - b Where do you live?
 - c When were you born?
 - d What do you do?
 - e Are you married?
 - f What's your last name?
 - g Have you got any children?
 - h Where are you from?

Language note

Giving your date of birth

16 March 1985

We write: 16.03.85

We say: sixteen (oh) three eighty-five
OR

the sixteenth of the third eighty-five

- 4 Speaking Use the form in exercise 2 and the questions in exercise 3. Interview your partner.

English in the world

Saying email addresses

- 1 Say the email addresses below.

meryem.yilmaz@abc.com

meryem dot yilmaz at a b c dot com

a_person@anywhere.co.uk

a underscore person at
anywhere dot co dot u k

z-antonio@abbi.pt

-z hyphen antonio at abbi dot p t

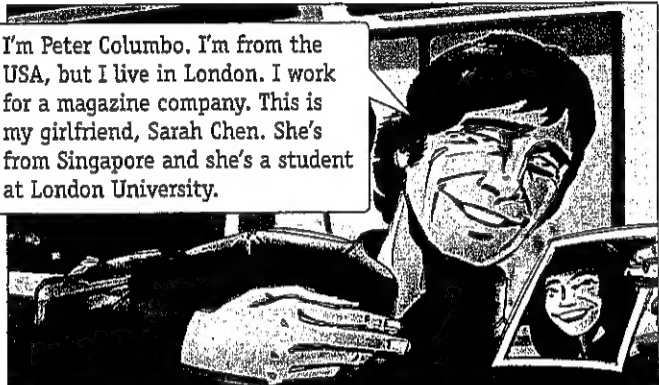
- 2 How do you say email addresses in your language?

- b Listen again. Complete the rest of the form.

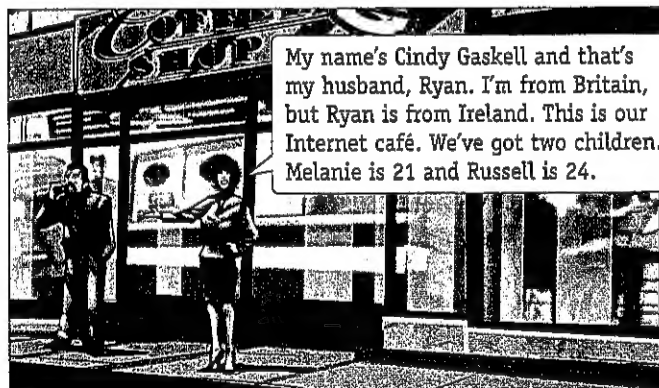
1 4.1 Read and listen.



My name's Lucy Patterson and I'm British. I work for an advertising agency. I'm a personal assistant. This is my boyfriend. His name's Jordan Morris and he's Australian. He's a computer engineer, but he really wants to be an actor.



I'm Peter Columbo. I'm from the USA, but I live in London. I work for a magazine company. This is my girlfriend, Sarah Chen. She's from Singapore and she's a student at London University.



My name's Cindy Gaskell and that's my husband, Ryan. I'm from Britain, but Ryan is from Ireland. This is our Internet café. We've got two children. Melanie is 21 and Russell is 24.

2 Read the texts. Copy and complete the table.

	Name	Nationality	Job
1	Lucy Patterson	British	personal assistant
2			

3 Complete the sentences with the correct names.

- _____ is Ryan and Cindy's son.
- _____ is Jordan's girlfriend.
- _____ is Ryan's wife.
- _____ is Sarah's boyfriend.
- _____ is Russell's sister.
- _____ are Melanie's parents.

4 4.2 Read and listen to the story. Answer the questions.

- Why is Peter busy?
- Where is Sarah?
- Who is at university in Manchester?
- Where is Russell at the moment?



Cindy Morning, Peter. How are you?

Peter Fine, thanks, Cindy. And you?

Cindy Yes, OK. Are you busy?

Peter Yes, I am. We're moving to our new offices this week.

Cindy How's Sarah? Is she away at the moment?

Peter Yes, she's in Manchester.

Cindy Really? Our daughter, Melanie, is at university there.

Peter How's your son these days?

Cindy Russell? I don't know. He's travelling round the world. He was in Mexico last month.



Arrival of flight VK964 from Mexico City.

Oh, it's good to be home!

5 Complete the expressions.

Every day expressions Asking about people

How _____ you?

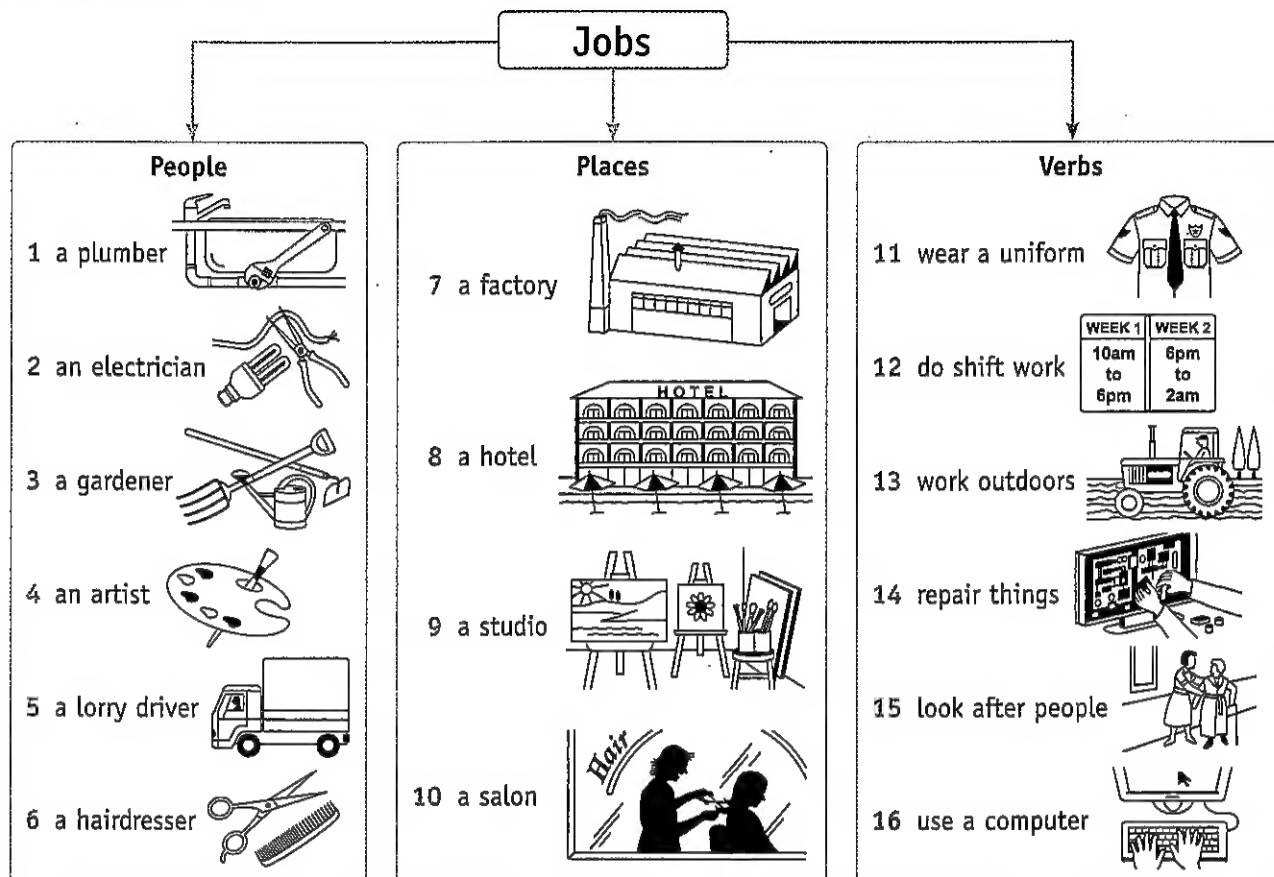
Are _____ busy?

How _____ Sarah?

Is she _____ at the moment?

6 Work in a group. Practise the story in exercise 4.

1 5.1 Listen and repeat.



2 Add two people, places, and verbs to the diagram.

Language box Word building 1

I drive a lorry. → I'm a lorry driver.
I clean windows. → I'm a window cleaner.

3 Give two examples of people who do the things in the VERBS section of the diagram.

wear a uniform: *police officers, flight attendants*

4 Write three sentences about each person below.



– He/She's a ...
– He/She works (in a) ...
– He/She does/uses, etc. ...

5 Work with a partner.

A Think of a job.

B Ask questions.

A Answer: Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.

B Try to guess the job.

A Do you wear a uniform?

B No, I don't.

A Do you work in a ... ?

B Yes, I do.

A Are you a ... ?

6 Writing Write eight sentences about your job/studies and your friends/family.

1 I'm an electrician. I work in a hospital.
I repair ...

2 My sister is an artist. She works in a studio in the city. She draws ...

6 GRAMMAR

1 6.1 Read and listen. Who is Russell talking about?



Russell Hi, Dad. Can I ... Mmm, she's nice. Does she come here every day?

Ryan Lucy? Yes, she does. She usually comes in when she finishes work.

Russell Does she work near here?

Ryan No, she doesn't, but she lives near here - in Brent Street.

Russell Oh, right. What does she do?

Ryan She works for an advertising company. Do you like her?

Russell Yes, I do. I think she's gorgeous.

Ryan Well, she doesn't need a boyfriend, I'm afraid. She's already got one. It's Jordan.

Russell Oh!

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 103.

Present simple

We use the present simple for:

permanent states She *lives* near here.

regular activities She *comes* here every day.

I *live* in Brent Street.

She *lives* in Brent Street.

I *don't work* near here.

She *doesn't work* near here.

Do you *come* here every day?

Does she *come* here every day?

Yes, I *do*.

Yes, she *does*.

No, I *don't*.

No, she *doesn't*.

Where do you *work*?

Where does she *work*?

3 Describe Jordan's life.

1 He *lives* in Park Road.

1 I *live* in Park Road.

2 I *work* for a computer company.

3 I *repair* computers.

4 I *drive* a van.

5 I *start work* at nine o'clock.

6 I *finish work* at 5.30.

7 I *often go* to The Coffee Shop.

8 I *meet my friends* there.

4 6.2 Drill. Listen. Say the negative.

1 I *live* near the station.

I *don't live* near the station.

2 He *finishes work* at six.

He *doesn't finish work* at six.

5 Ellen is talking about her life. Complete the text with the verbs in brackets.

I ¹ *work* (work) in an old people's home and I normally ² _____ (work) at night. My husband, Dave, ³ _____ (work) in an office. He ⁴ _____ (not work) at night. I ⁵ _____ (finish) work at 7 a.m. and I ⁶ _____ (get) home at 7.15. I ⁷ _____ (not take) the children to school. Dave ⁸ _____ (take) them and I ⁹ _____ (go) to bed. Dave ¹⁰ _____ (finish) work at 5.30. We ¹¹ _____ (have) a meal together. At 10.30, I ¹² _____ (drive) to work. Dave normally ¹³ _____ (watch) TV for an hour and then he ¹⁴ _____ (go) to bed.

6a Speaking Make questions for Ellen. Use the cues.

- 1 Where/you/work?
- 2 you/work/at night?
- 3 What/your husband/do?
- 4 he/work/at night, too?
- 5 What time/you/finish work?
- 6 What/you/do/during the day?
- 7 What time/Dave/finish work?
- 8 What/you/do/in the evening?

b Work with a partner. Ask the questions and give Ellen's answers.

7 Your life Write a paragraph about your daily life. Use some of the verbs below.

work get up have leave drive
start finish go watch



1 **7.1** Read and listen to the text. What does Arne do? Does he like his job?

My job



Arne Henriksen lives in a village near Stavanger in Norway. He's an electrical engineer and he works on an oil rig in the North Sea.

Arne lives on the rig for two weeks and then he has two weeks off. For the first week, he's on the day shift from 7 a.m. to 7 p.m. In the second week, he changes to the night shift.

When he isn't on duty, he always sleeps a lot. He usually goes to the gym, too, and he sometimes plays table tennis. There's a cinema on the

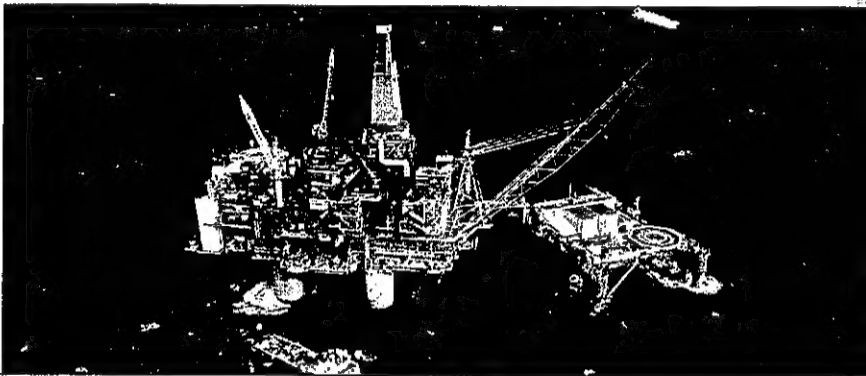
rig, so Arne normally watches five or six films a week.

About 480 people work on the rig. It's like a small village with all sorts of workers – cleaners, engineers, plumbers, electricians, chefs, secretaries, computer engineers, nurses, painters, and so on.

After two weeks, Arne leaves the rig and goes home. 'We have a small farm, so there are always things to do,' he says. He doesn't usually work all the time when he's at home. He

likes fishing, and in the winter he often goes skiing.

Arne likes his job. The money is very good and he enjoys the time at home, but there are problems. 'The weather's often bad in the North Sea, so the rig moves a lot,' he says. 'I rarely get seasick, but it isn't very nice when I do. The biggest problem is the shift work. When I change from the day shift to the night shift, I can never sleep. I watch a lot of films then!'



2 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 He lives in Norway.
- 2 He goes home every day.
- 3 He always works on the day shift.
- 4 A shift is twelve hours.
- 5 Over four hundred people work on the rig.
- 6 They're all engineers.
- 7 Arne works in a shop when he's at home.
- 8 He doesn't often get seasick in bad weather.

3 Find these things in the text.

- three things he does when he isn't on duty
- three other jobs that people do on the rig
- two things he does when he's at home
- two things that he likes about the job
- two problems with the job

Language note Adverbs of frequency

0% ← ----- → 100%
 never rarely sometimes often usually/normally always

He **sometimes** plays table tennis.

There are **always** things to do.

He **doesn't usually** work all the time.

4 Make sentences with the adverbs of frequency about:

- 1 Arne's life
- 2 your own life.

5a Speaking Write six questions to ask Arne.

Where do you work?

Do you do shift work?

b Work with a partner. Interview Arne.

English in the world

24/7

Normal working hours in Britain are 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. However, a lot of people work outside these times because their workplaces are open 24/7 – twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week. For example:

- 1 hospitals, power stations, the police
- 2 bars and clubs
- 3 a lot of big supermarkets.

Compare this with your country.



Making appointments

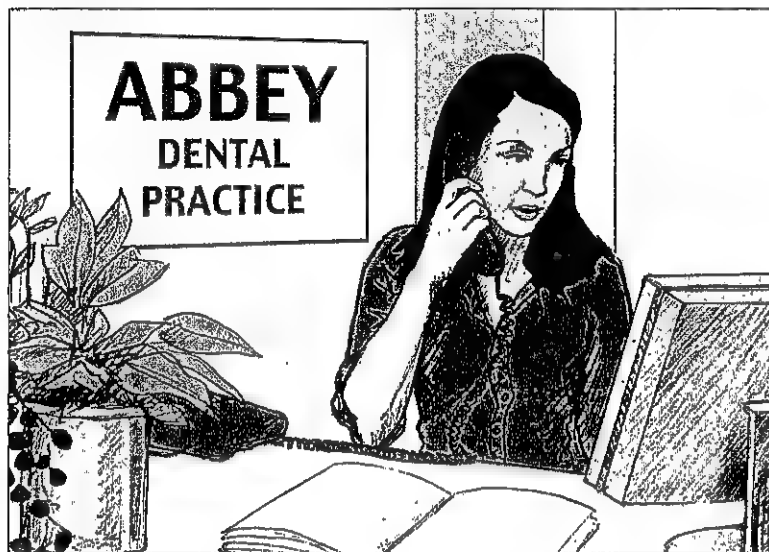
1 Say these dates.

1 the first of May OR May the first

1 1 May 4 22 October 7 3 January

2 16 November 5 30 March 8 10 December

3 12 April 6 4 July 9 31 February

2a 8.1 Listen and complete the dialogue. Use *in*, *on*, *at*.

Receptionist Hello, Abbey Dental Practice.

Caller Hello. I've got an appointment ¹ 1 June, but I'm afraid I can't make that now.

Receptionist I see. What time is your appointment?

— Caller It's ² 12.45.

Receptionist Ah, yes. Mrs Henderson?

Caller Yes, that's right.

Receptionist Would you like to make a new appointment?

Caller Yes, please.

Receptionist Can you come ³ 16 June ⁴ the morning?

Caller What day is that?

Receptionist It's a Tuesday.

Caller Yes, that's fine. What time?

Receptionist Well, can you come ⁵ half past ten or ⁶ quarter past eleven?

Caller Oh, er, quarter past eleven, please.

Receptionist Fine. So your new appointment is ⁷ 11.15 ⁸ Tuesday 16 June.

Caller Thank you very much. Goodbye.

Receptionist Goodbye.

b Listen again and check.

c Work with a partner. Read the conversation.

3a Study the rules.

	1969	January
in	the morning	winter
	6 August	Sunday
on	Friday afternoon	
	six o'clock	3.15
at	the weekend	night

b 8.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

1 When's your interview? (Friday)
It's on Friday.

4 Complete the expressions.

Everyday Expressions
Making appointments

What time ____ your appointment?

I'm afraid I ____ make that now.

Would you like to ____ an appointment?

Can you ____ on 16 June?

What day ____ that?

5a 8.3 Listen. Complete the table.

		1	2
Old appointment	Date		
	Time		
New appointment	Date		
	Time		

b Work with a partner. Use the table above. Make the conversations.

Pronunciation

Word stress 1


1 8.4 Listen. Underline the syllable with the stress.


<u>Monday</u>	evening
<u>July</u>	Wednesday
after <u>noon</u>	April
· November	receptionist
birthday	engineer
electrician	eleven
appointment	interview


2 Listen again and repeat.


1a Write the verbs in the correct spaces below.


have do get make go


1 shopping 


2 out 


3 to bed 


4 a shower 


5 breakfast 


6 a rest 

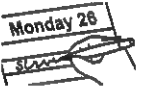
7 up 


8 dressed 


9 home 


10 a cup of coffee 

11 the bed 

12 an appointment 

13 my homework 

14 the ironing 

15 the housework 

b 9.1 Listen, check, and repeat.

2 9.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence with the correct verb.

- 1 a shower
I have a shower.
- 2 the housework
I do the housework.

3 Make three expressions with each verb.

watch: watch a football match, watch a DVD, ...

listen to:

read:

play:

4a Use suitable verbs. Complete what Arun says about his day.

I ¹ get up at 7.30 and I ² _____ a shower. Then I ³ _____ dressed and I ⁴ _____ the bed. I ⁵ _____ breakfast and I ⁶ _____ the radio. Then I ⁷ _____ to work. I ⁸ _____ lunch at one o'clock. After work, I sometimes ⁹ _____ shopping or I ¹⁰ _____ tennis with some friends. When I ¹¹ _____ home, I ¹² _____ dinner. I sometimes ¹³ _____ some housework in the evening. I ¹⁴ _____ the news on TV and then I ¹⁵ _____ to bed. I ¹⁶ _____ a book for a quarter of an hour before I ¹⁷ _____ to sleep.

b 9.3 Listen and check.

5a Speaking Write six questions for your partner. Use the expressions from exercises 1-3.

Do you ... ?
When do you ... ?
Where do you ... ?

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer. Find two things that are the same.

6a You're life Choose two things that you:

- do every day
- never do
- normally do at the weekend
- like doing
- don't like doing.

b Write a sentence about each thing.

Pronunciation

Stress in expressions

- 1 9.4 In expressions, we don't normally put the stress on the verb. Read and listen.

go to bed have a shower

2 9.5 Listen and repeat.

get ready have breakfast go to work
make an appointment read a book
play the piano do the ironing

10 GRAMMAR

1 10.1 Read and listen.



Monday wasn't a good day for Lucy. Everything went wrong. She was in a hurry because she got up late. She **didn't** have breakfast. She just made a cup of coffee, but it was very hot and she **dropped** it.

She picked up her bag and her keys. Just then the post **arrived**. She put her keys on the table in the hall and **opened** the letters. There **were** two bills and a letter from the bank. She **left** the house, closed the door and **hurried** to her car. She stopped and looked in her bag. Her keys **weren't** there. And they **weren't** in her pocket. Then she remembered. They were on the table in the hall. And it wasn't just her car keys. Her house keys were there, too. It wasn't a good start to the week.

2a Read the examples. Study the rules on page 104.

Past simple: *to be*

She **was** in a hurry. Monday **wasn't** a good day.

There **were** two bills. Her keys **weren't** there.

b Underline more examples of the past simple of *to be* in the text.

3 Choose the correct form of the verb.

- Lucy's neighbours had a key, but they *wasn't/weren't* in, because they *was/were* on holiday.
- The weather *wasn't/weren't* very good. It *was/were* cloudy and it *wasn't/weren't* very warm.
- She walked to the bus stop, but there *was/were* a long queue and the first two buses *was/were* full.
- Lucy *was/were* late, so her boss *wasn't/weren't* very happy.
- In the afternoon Lucy *was/were* tired. She had three meetings. They *was/were* very long and boring.

4a Read the examples. Study the rules on page 105.

Past simple

We use the past simple for completed events in the past.

1 regular verbs

open I **opened** the letters.

2 irregular verbs (see page 123)

get up You **got** up late.

3 negative statements

I **had** breakfast. I **didn't** have breakfast.

NOT I ~~didn't~~ had breakfast

b Underline more examples of past simple verbs in the text in exercise 1.

5 Correct the sentences about Lucy's day.

- 1 She *didn't* get up on time. She got up late.
- 2 She got up on time.
- 3 She had breakfast.
- 4 She drank a cup of coffee.
- 5 She picked up her laptop.
- 6 She put her keys down because the phone rang.
- 7 She got five bills in the post.
- 8 She left her keys in the kitchen.

6 10.2 Drill. Listen. Give the negative.

- 1 I got up late.
I *didn't* get up late.

7a Put the verbs in the past simple.

- 1 I was late for work. (be)
- 2 I took the bus. (take)
- 3 I lost my keys. (lose)
- 4 I was ill. (be)
- 5 I went to the cinema. (go)
- 6 I watched a DVD. (watch)
- 7 I ate a pizza. (eat)
- 8 I got a bill. (get)

b Your life Did these things happen to you yesterday? Tell a partner.

I *was* late for work. OR I *wasn't* late for work.

11 SKILLS

- 1 Look at the pictures of Vijay and Seema. What is happening in each picture?



- 2 **11.1** Listen. Number the pictures in the correct order.

- 3 Listen again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Why weren't Vijay and Seema happy?
- 2 Why did they have an argument?
- 3 Why did Vijay stop to talk to the man?
- 4 Why wasn't the man at work that day?
- 5 Where do Vijay and Seema live now?
- 6 What does Seema do?
- 7 What does Vijay do?
- 8 Why isn't he working today?

- 4 How did the conversation change Vijay and Seema's life? Complete the table.

Their life before	Their life now
They lived in a big house.	They live in a small village.
	He doesn't earn much money.
	He sees his family a lot.
	He works at home.
	He doesn't travel much.
	They're happy now.

Language note *because* and *so*

He was often away, **because** he travelled a lot. (reason)

He travelled a lot, **so** he was often away. (result)

- 5 Writing Complete the summary of Vijay and Seema's story.

At first, life was good for Vijay and Seema. Vijay had a good job. He earned ¹_____, so ²_____. However, they weren't happy, because ³_____. When they were on holiday, Vijay phoned ⁴_____, so ⁵_____. Vijay went for a walk on the beach and he met a man. The man made ⁶_____ and he was very happy. Vijay and Seema decided to change their life, so ⁷_____.

Now Seema ⁸_____. Vijay ⁹_____, but he isn't working today, because ¹⁰_____.

English in the world

Moving house

Most people in Britain own their house or flat. They usually take out a **mortgage** to pay for it. When they move house, they sell their house and buy another one.

People normally buy and sell houses through an **estate agent**. A **solicitor** deals with the contracts and other legal matters.



Now I can ...
understand and re-tell a story.

- 1 Look back at Episode 1 on page 4.
 - 1 Where was Sarah last week?
 - 2 Who came home?
- 2 **12.1** Read and listen to the story. Does Russell help his parents in the café?
- 3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false statements.
 - 1 Ryan is happy.
 - 2 Ryan and Cindy made a lot of money last month.
 - 3 The weather wasn't very good last month.
 - 4 The factory closed down a year ago.
 - 5 The workers don't go to the café any more.
 - 6 Russell arrived yesterday.
 - 7 He came home because he didn't have any money.
 - 8 Cindy's happy because Russell is at home.
 - 9 Russell always gets up at nine o'clock.
 - 10 Russell eats a lot.

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions

Responding to information

Oh, I s_____.
 That's t_____.
 Yes, I h_____ about that.
 Oh, r_____.
 Yes, I see what you m_____.

- b Practise the expressions together. Use the correct statements from exercise 3.

A Ryan isn't happy.
 B Yes, that's true.

- 5 Language check. Underline examples of the past simple in the story.
- 6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Sarah Hello, Ryan. You don't look very happy.

Ryan No. Well, we didn't make much money in the café last month - again.

Sarah Oh, I see.

Ryan We didn't get many customers, because the weather was bad. And the factory on the corner closed recently, so the workers don't come now.

Sarah That's true.

Ryan And last Thursday our son Russell arrived home.

Sarah Yes, I heard about that.

Ryan He was in Mexico, but he didn't have any money, so he came back.

Sarah Oh, right.

Ryan Cindy's happy. Russell can't do anything wrong in her eyes.

Sarah But can't he help in the café? You could save some money.

Ryan Russell? He doesn't get up till midday. And he eats like a horse!



No, you don't save money when Russell's here. You lose it.

Russell Morning, Dad. Oh, hello.

Ryan Russell, this is Sarah.

Sarah Hi. Nice to meet you!

Ryan And, it's the afternoon, actually.

Russell Oh, OK. Can I have this coffee? And those cakes and sandwiches look good.

Yes, I see what you mean.

1 13.1 Listen and repeat.



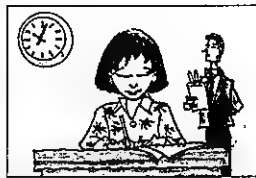
1 be born



2 grow up



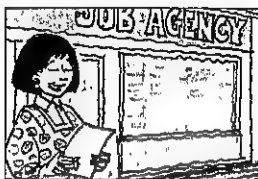
3 move (house)



4 take an exam



5 graduate



6 get a job



7 lose a job



8 meet your future husband/wife



9 go out with someone



10 fall in love



11 get married



12 have children



13 get divorced



14 retire



15 die

2a Put the expressions in the table below.

general events	<i>be born, ...</i>
education	<i>take an exam, ...</i>
relationships	<i>meet your future husband/wife, ...</i>
work	<i>get a job, ...</i>

b Which verbs in the expressions have a regular past form?

3 13.2 Drill. Listen. Say what happened last year.

- 1 I / retire
I retired last year.

13.2 Years

We say:

1969 nineteen sixty-nine 2012 twenty twelve
2003 two thousand and three 1905 nineteen 'oh' five

4 13.3 Listen. Bernard is talking about his life. Complete the sentences.

- His parents _____ in Chile.
- Bernard _____ in Liverpool.
- He _____ in London.
- He _____ university in Birmingham.
- He _____ his wife in Sydney.
- He and his family _____ to South Africa.

5 Listen again. What does Bernard say about these numbers and dates?

1940s	1951	5
16	1969	1972
1980	35	2001

6a Your life Write six sentences about your life story.

b Tell a partner.

English in the world

Going to university

University courses in Britain and the USA usually last three or four years. Students don't always go to their local university. They can choose any university in the country, so a lot of students go to a different city.

First-year students normally live at the university in a hall of residence. In their second and third year, they often share a house or flat with other students.

Compare this with your country.

14 GRAMMAR

1 14.1 Read and listen.



Bob How did you meet your husband, Sue?
Sue Well, it started in Rome.
Bob Were you on holiday?
Sue Yes, I was. Anyway, I saw this guy.
Bob Was he on holiday, too?
Sue No, he wasn't. He was a tour guide there.
Bob Oh, I see. So did you go on a date?
Sue No, we didn't. We didn't speak much, but two years later I saw him again – at our local supermarket.
Bob Really! What did you do?
Sue I said, 'Were you a tour guide in Rome?' and he said, 'No.' It wasn't the same guy!
Bob Oops! Did you tell him about the tour guide?
Sue Yes, I did, and we laughed about it. Anyway, now we're married with three children.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 105.

Past simple: questions and short answers

1 The verb to be

Were you on holiday? Yes, we were.
 No, we weren't.
 Was he a tour guide? Yes, he was.
 No, he wasn't.

How long were you there?

2 Regular and irregular verbs

Did you enjoy your holiday? Yes, I did.
 No, I didn't.

NOT Did you enjoyed your holiday?

What did he say?

3 14.2 Drill. Listen. Ask the questions.

- 1 We met in Paris.
Did you meet in Paris, too?
- 2 We were on holiday.
Were you on holiday, too?

4a Complete the questions and short answers. Use the words in brackets.

- A ¹(you/away) Were you away last week?
- B ²(Yes) Yes, I was. I was in Moscow.
- A Oh? ³(you/there) on business?
- B ⁴(No). I was at my brother's wedding.
- A Really? ⁵(he/marry) a girl from Russia?
- B ⁶(Yes). Her name's Hanja.
- A ⁷(they/meet) in Moscow?
- B ⁸(Yes).
- A ⁹(your brother/on holiday) there?
- B ¹⁰(No). He was a student at Moscow University.
- A ¹¹(Hanja/a student) there, too?
- B ¹²(Yes).
- A ¹³(Why/he/go) to Moscow University?
- B He studied Russian there.
- A ¹⁴(you/visit) other places in Russia?
- B ¹⁵(No), but I saw a lot of Moscow.
- A ¹⁶(you/have) a good time?
- B ¹⁷(Yes). I really enjoyed it.

b Work with a partner. Practise the conversation.

5a Complete the questions. Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Where were you born? (be)
- 2 _____ there? (grow up)
- 3 _____ house when you were a child? (move)
- 4 Where _____ to school? (go)
- 5 _____ a good student? (be)
- 6 What subjects _____? (like)
- 7 How old _____ when you left school? (be)
- 8 _____ to university? (go)

b Your life Use the questions in exercise 5a. Ask and answer with a partner. Try to find some more information.

- 1 Where were you born?
Were your parents born there, too?
How long did you live there?

1 **15.1** Listen. Do you know these kinds of music?

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 classical music | 4 country music |
| 2 jazz | 5 soul |
| 3 blues | 6 gospel |

2 **15.2** Read and listen to the text.

The Father of Soul Music



Ray Charles Robinson was born in 1930 in Georgia, USA, but he grew up in Florida. He lived with his mother, Aretha, and his younger brother. They were very poor. When Ray was five years old, his brother died and then two years later Ray went blind. Aretha Robinson sent her son to St Augustine's, a school for blind children. He studied classical music there.

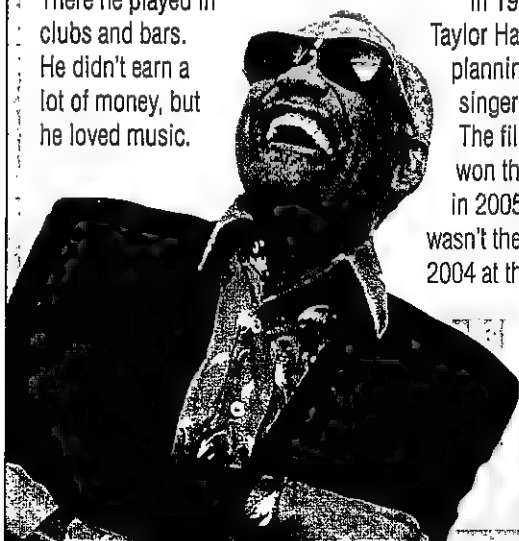
When Ray was fourteen, his mother died and he left school. For two years he played the piano with some local bands to earn the money for a bus ticket to Seattle. There he played in clubs and bars. He didn't earn a lot of money, but he loved music.

'Music,' he said, 'was like food or water for me.'

At first he sang songs by other famous singers, but he soon created a new kind of music. He used blues, jazz, country, and gospel music and he created 'soul music'. He changed his name to Ray Charles, and by 1955 the poor black boy from Florida was rich and famous.

He gave a lot of his money to schools for blind black children. His life also had a dark side. He took heroin for many years. He was married and divorced twice and had twelve children.

In 1988, a film director, Taylor Hackford, started planning a film about the singer's life. He called it *Ray*. The film's star, Jamie Foxx, won the Oscar for Best Actor in 2005. Sadly Ray Charles wasn't there. He died in June 2004 at the age of 73.



3 Match the names with the descriptions.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1 Jamie Foxx | — |
| 2 Taylor Hackford | — |
| 3 Ray Charles | — |
| 4 Aretha Robinson | — |
- a directed the film *Ray*.
b was 'the father of soul music'.
c was the star of the film *Ray*.
d was Ray's mother.

4 Read the text again. Put these events in the correct order.

- He went to St Augustine's School.
- Jamie Foxx won an Oscar for Best Actor.
- He moved to Seattle.
- 1 His brother died.
- Taylor Hackford started a film about Ray.
- He went blind.
- He became rich and famous.
- Ray Charles died.
- His mother died.

5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Where was Ray Charles born?
- 2 Where did he grow up?
- 3 What did he study?
- 4 How did he travel to Seattle?
- 5 How did he save money for the ticket?
- 6 What did he say about music?
- 7 How did he create 'soul music'?
- 8 Who did he give money to?
- 9 How many children did he have?
- 10 How many times was he married?

Language note Infinitive of purpose

- He played the piano **to** earn money for a bus ticket.
- He went to St Augustine's **to** study music.

6 **Speaking** Work with a partner. Interview Taylor Hackford about Ray Charles' life. Use the questions in exercise 5.

7 **Your life** Think about your favourite singers and/or bands. What do you know about them? Tell a partner.

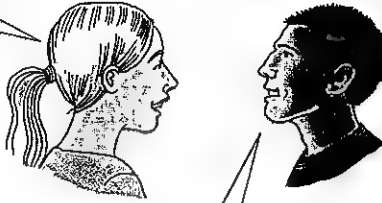
16

Responding to news

1a **16.1** Read and listen. Match the conversations with the correct endings.

1

I took my driving test yesterday.



How did it go?

- a I passed.
Well done! I knew you could do it.
- b I failed.
Never mind. Better luck next time.

2

I had an interview for a job last week.




How was it?

- a It was OK, but I didn't get it.
Oh, dear. Never mind.
- b Great. I got it!
That's fantastic news!

3

I played in a tennis competition yesterday.



How did you get on?

- a I won.
Congratulations! Well done!
- b I lost.
Oh, dear. That's a pity.

b Work with a partner. Practise the conversations.

2 Complete the expressions.

News

Asking about news

How did it _____?
How did you _____ on?
How _____ it?

Responding to good news

Well done!
I _____ you could do it.
That's _____ news!
Congratulations!

Responding to bad news

Never mind.
Better _____ next time.
Oh, dear.
That's _____ pity.

3 Make new conversations for these situations.

- You had an audition last week.
- You played in a sports match yesterday.
- You took an English exam two weeks ago.

4a Read the email.

Hi Mick
I heard that you failed your driving test. Never mind! Better luck next time.
All the best,
Trish

b Write an email to 'Sam'. He passed his test.

5 Writing Look at situations 2 and 3 in exercise 1. Write emails to the people.

Pronunciation

Intonation

16.2 Listen and repeat.

- Well done! (good news)
- Never mind (bad news)
- Congratulations!
- That's fantastic news!
- Better luck next time.
- I knew you could do it.
- Oh, dear. That's a pity.

1 17.1 Read and listen.



- A Hello. Can I help you?
 B Yes. How much is a ticket to London, please?
 A Single or return?
 B Return, please.
 A OK. Well, the fare in standard class is £24 and the first-class fare is £46.
 B And how much is a seat reservation?
 A Seat reservations are free.
 B And what time is the first train this afternoon, please?
 A There's a train at 12.32, but that's a local train so it stops at every station.
 B What time does it get to London?
 A It arrives at 2.20.
 B Is there a fast train?
 A Yes. There's an express at 1.15 and that arrives in London at two o'clock.
 B Oh, I think that's better.
 A But the express isn't direct. You change at Oxford.
 B Oh, OK. What platform does that train leave from?
 A It departs from platform 3.
 B Thank you very much.

2a Match the meanings with the words in bold in exercise 1.

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 a slow train | <i>a local train</i> | 7 the price of the ticket |
| 2 a fast train | | 8 a seat that is booked |
| 3 leaves from | | 9 non-stop |
| 4 arrive in | | 10 take two trains |
| 5 a one-way ticket | | 11 a cheap ticket |
| 6 a two-way ticket | | 12 an expensive ticket |

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

3a 17.2 Listen. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- The passenger wants to travel to Manchester.
- She wants a standard class ticket.
- She's travelling today.
- She buys a return ticket.
- She doesn't ask for a seat reservation.
- The fare is £52.
- The next train is direct.
- There's an express at 11.30.
- It arrives at 12 o'clock.
- It leaves from platform 4.

b Listen again and check.

4a Writing Use the information in exercise 1. Complete the email.

I've got the information about the train to London. The ¹_____ fare is £24 in standard class and £46 in ²_____. Seat reservations are ³_____. The ⁴_____ train in the afternoon is at 12.32, but it's a ⁵_____ train. It gets to London at ⁶_____. There's an ⁷_____ at 1.15. It gets to London at two o'clock, but it isn't ⁸_____. You change at ⁹_____. It departs from ¹⁰_____.

Which fare and train do you want?

b Write an email with the information in exercise 3.

Pronunciation

Word stress 2

1 17.3 Listen and repeat.

single

return

2a Put these words in the correct column above.

local standard express depart
 ticket direct arrive platform

b 17.4 Listen, check, and repeat.

18 GRAMMAR

1 18.1 Read and listen.

Sarah is going to the university. She normally cycles, but she isn't cycling today because it's raining. At the moment, she's walking to the bus stop. Jordan is putting things in his van.



Sarah Hi, Jordan.

Jordan Oh, hi Sarah. Are you going to the university?

Sarah Yes, I am. I'm not taking my bike today, because I don't want to get wet.

Jordan Good idea.

Sarah What are you doing?

Jordan I'm delivering some computers. Nowhere near the university, I'm afraid, so I can't give you a lift.

Sarah Oh, that's OK. Bye.

Jordan Yes, see you. Don't get wet!



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 106.

Present continuous

I'm going to work.
He's taking the bus.
We're getting in the car.

Are you going to the university?

What are you doing?
Where is she going?

I'm not walking.
She isn't cycling.
They aren't stopping.

Yes, I am.
No, I'm not.

3a 18.2 Listen. Write two sentences. Use the cues.

1 *She isn't cycling. She's walking.*

1 she / cycle / walk

2 he / do a crossword / read a book

3 they / swim / jog

4 snow / rain

5 they / play golf / sunbathe

6 she / go to sleep / wake up

b Ask and answer about the sentences above.

A *Is she cycling?* B *No, she isn't.*

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 106.

Present continuous and present simple

We use the present continuous for what is happening now.

She isn't cycling today because it's raining.

We use the present simple for regular activities.

She usually cycles to the university.

5 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1 I usually walk (walk) to work, but I'm not walking (not walk) today. I take (take) the bus, because my bag's heavy.

2 We travel (travel) to work by train every day. At the moment we stand (stand) on the platform. We wait (wait) for the 7.45 train, but it's late.

3 I usually go (go) to work at eight o'clock, but I leave (leave) home early today, because they repair (repair) the road at the moment.

4 Sandra usually get (get) to work at nine o'clock, but it's 9.15 now and she isn't sitting (not sit) at her desk. She is looking for (look for) somewhere to park.

6 Your life Use the time expressions. Write six sentences about your life.

I always have a shower in the morning.

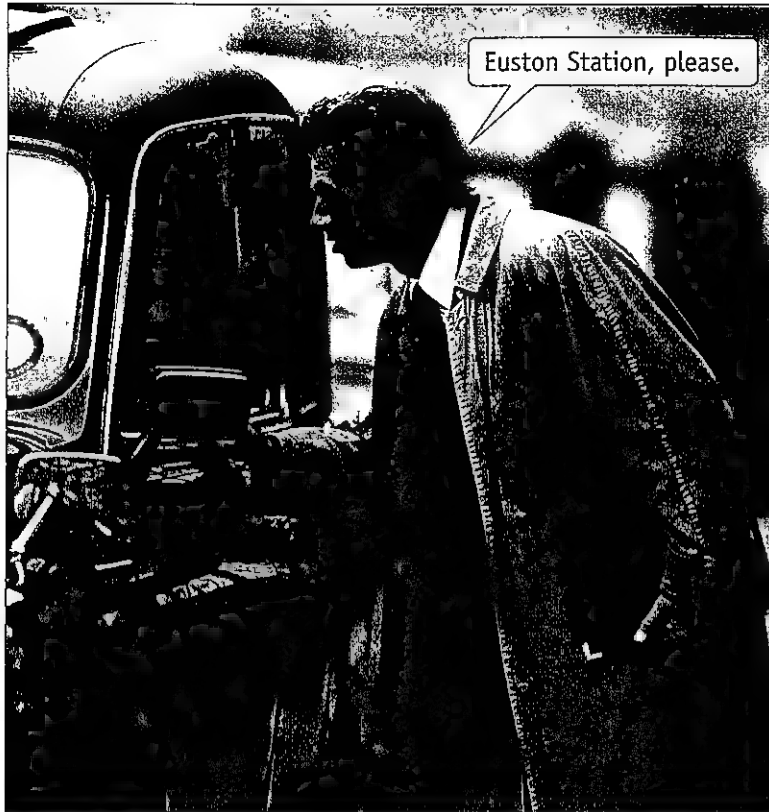
I'm not having a shower at the moment.

always every day usually
at the moment today now

19

SKILLS

- 1 **19.1** Listen to three taxi conversations. Where is each passenger from?



- 2 Listen again. Complete the table.

Conversation	Destination	Fare
1	Euston Station	
2		
3		

- 3 Listen again. Which passenger is it? Write 1, 2, or 3.

- _____ is travelling on business.
- _____ gives the driver a tip.
- _____ wants a receipt.
- _____ likes the city.
- _____ is on holiday.
- _____ gets out of the taxi early.

Language note: *want, like, need*

We don't normally use the present continuous with *want*, *like*, and *need*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| What number do you want? | NOT What number are you wanting ? |
| Do you like it there? | NOT Are you liking it there? |
| You need International Departures. | NOT You're needing International Departures. |

- 4 Tick ✓ the things the taxi driver talks about. What does he say about them?

- the traffic
- sport
- his girlfriend
- the airport
- his family
- his job
- the weather

- 5 **Speaking** Make conversations in a taxi. Follow the pattern.

A Taxi! Baker Street, please.

B OK.

Talk to the passenger. Choose one of the topics in exercise 4.

B Here we are, Baker Street. What number do you want?

A Number 29, please.

B OK. Here we are - number 29.

A Thank you.

B That's £8.50, please.

A Could I have a receipt, please?

B Certainly. Here you are.

A Thank you very much. Goodbye.

B Bye.

English in the world

Transport signs

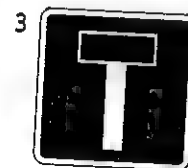
What are these signs in your language?



Roadworks



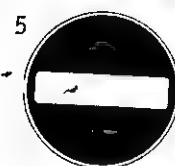
Crossroads



Dead end



Steep hill



No entry



Sharp bend

- 1 Look back at Episode 2. What does Ryan think about Russell?
- 2 **20.1** Read and listen to the story. Who is the woman with the camera?
- 3 Answer the questions.
 - 1 What are Ryan and Russell doing?
 - 2 Is it Ryan's idea?
 - 3 What is Russell looking at?
 - 4 Is The Coffee Shop open?
 - 5 What is the woman doing?
 - 6 Why does the woman ask about the area?
 - 7 Where are Russell and the woman going?
 - 8 Why is Cindy annoyed?

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions

Offering and asking for help

Would you like _____ hand (with ...)?

No, _____'s OK, thanks.

Can you _____ me a hand with (...) ?

Sure.

I can ... if you _____.

That's _____ kind. Thank you.

- b Work with a partner. Make conversations with the cues below. Start like this:

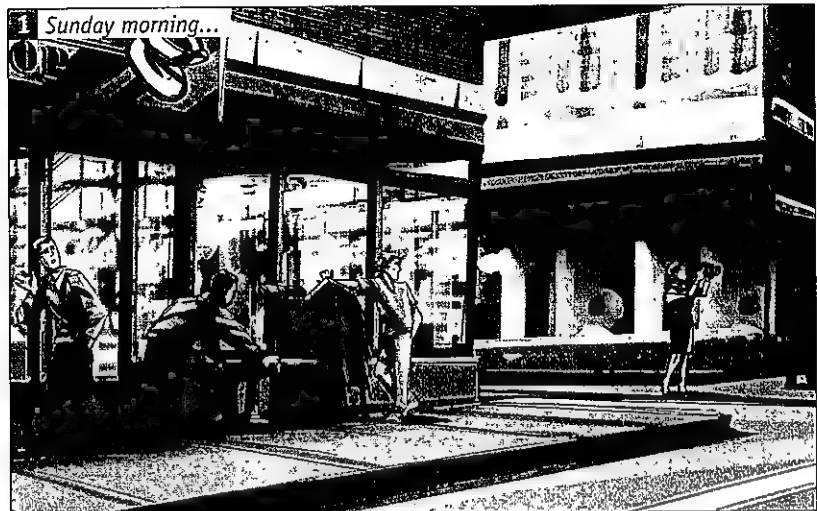
Would you like ... ?

OR

Can you give ... ?

- the shopping
- these drinks
- the housework
- these bags
- the dinner

- 5 Language check. Underline examples of the present continuous in the story.
- 6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Jordan Hi, Ryan. What are you doing?

Ryan We're putting tables and chairs outside the café. It's Cindy's idea.

Jordan Would you like a hand?

Ryan No, it's OK, thanks. Russell's helping me.

Jordan Oh, OK. See you, then.

Ryan Yes, bye, Jordan. Come on, Russell. What are you looking at?

Russell I'm looking at that woman over there with the camera.

Ryan She's probably a tourist. Anyway, can you give me a hand with this table?

Russell Sure ... Oh, just a minute. She's crossing the road. Mmm. She's very nice.



Woman Excuse me. Is The Coffee Shop open?

Ryan Yes, it is, but we aren't serving drinks outside at the moment.

Russell You're taking a lot of photographs. Are you a tourist?

Woman No, I'm not. I want to open a shop and I'm looking for a good area. What's this one like?

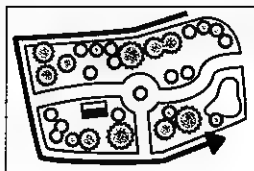
Russell Well, I'm not doing anything at the moment. I can show you around if you like.

Woman That's very kind. Thank you. I'm Anna, by the way.

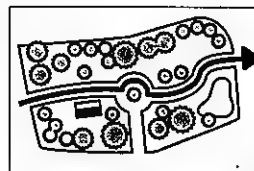
Come on, Ryan! Why aren't you moving those tables? Hurry up!

1 **21.1** Listen and repeat.

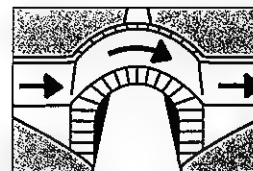
1 along the street



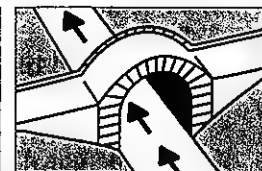
2 round the park



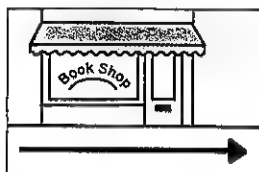
3 through the park



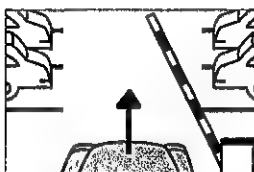
4 over the bridge



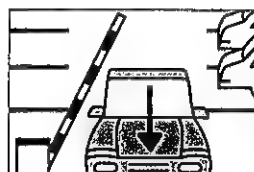
5 under the bridge



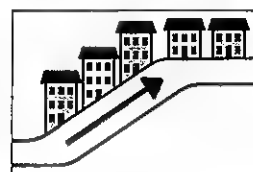
6 past the shop



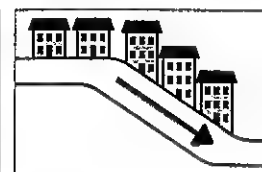
7 into the car park



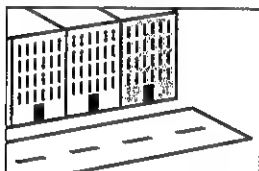
8 out of the car park



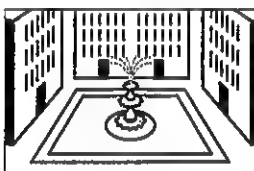
9 up the hill



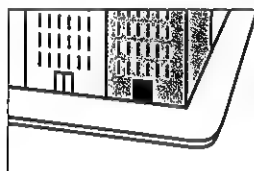
10 down the hill



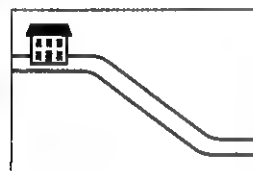
11 at the end of the road



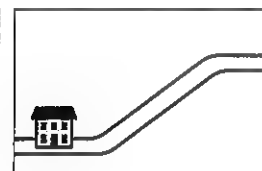
12 in the middle of the square



13 on the corner of the street



14 at the top of the hill



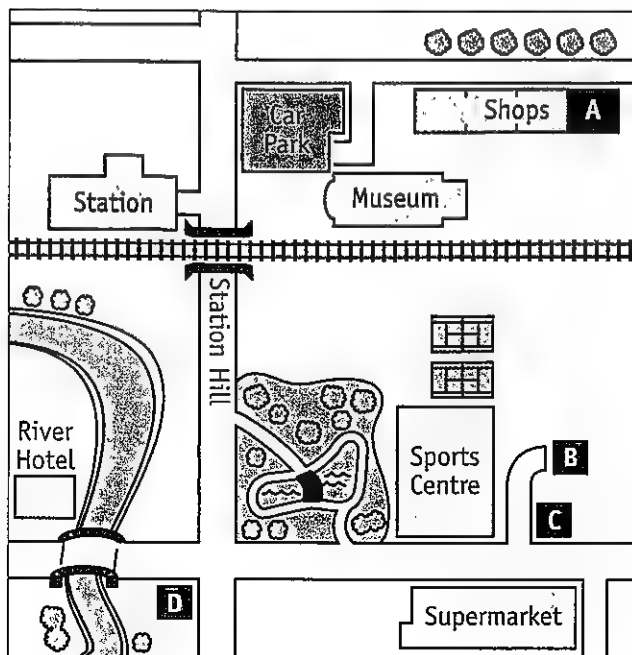
15 at the bottom of the hill

2 **21.2** Drill. Listen. Give the opposite.

1 Go over the bridge.

No, go under the bridge.

2 Turn left.

*No, turn right.*3 **21.3** Listen. Which building is Magda's office? A, B, C, or D?4 **Speaking** Ask for directions from the station to these places. Use the map in exercise 3.

- the park
- the sports centre
- the River Hotel
- the museum

A Excuse me. How do I get to the park, please?

B You turn right here, then you go under the bridge. After that, you ...

5 **Your life** Describe your route to work or school.

I come out of my flat and I turn right. I go down the stairs. At the bottom of the stairs, I turn left ...

Pronunciation
of short form1 **21.4** Listen. In expressions, we normally reduce
of to a schwa /ə/ sound.

It's in the middle of the town.

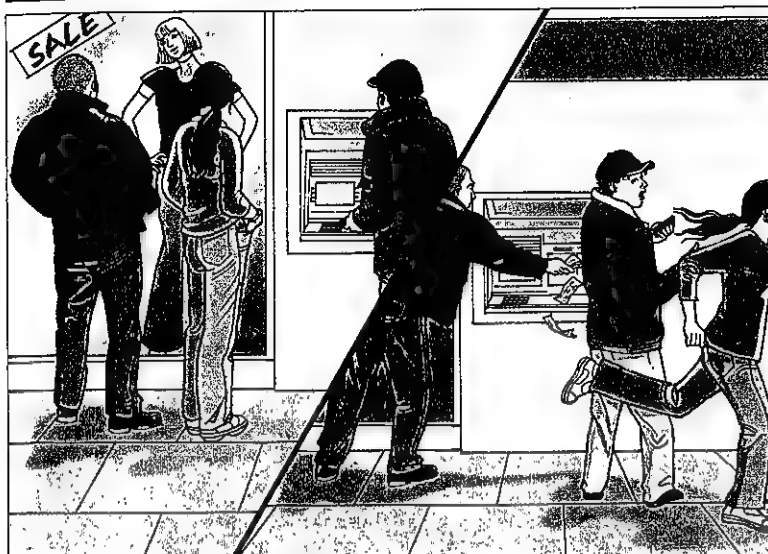
It's at the top of the hill.

2 **21.5** Listen and repeat. Copy the stress.

- 1 It's at the end of the road.
- 2 It's on the corner of the street.
- 3 It's at the bottom of the hill.
- 4 It's in the middle of the square.

22 GRAMMAR

1a 22.1 Read and listen.



Martin When I was going to the cash machine, I saw a man and a woman.

Policeman Were they watching you?

Martin No, they weren't. They were looking in a shop window.

Policeman What were they wearing?

Martin The woman was wearing a green sweatshirt.

Policeman Was she wearing jeans?

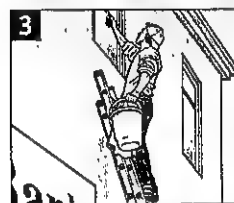
Martin Yes, she was. Anyway, while I was waiting for my money, the woman said 'Excuse me.'

Policeman What did you do?

Martin I looked round but she was running away. While I wasn't looking at the cash machine, the man took my money!

3a What were these people doing when the robbery happened? Use the cues.

1 They weren't working. They were having a break.



- 1 work/have a break
- 2 talk on a mobile/eat a hamburger
- 3 shop/clean windows
- 4 get on a bus/get in a taxi
- 5 come out of the bank/wait for a bus
- 6 read a newspaper/buy a newspaper

b Ask and answer about the pictures.

- A Were the men working?
B No, they weren't. They were having a break.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 107.

Past continuous

We use the past continuous for an activity in progress in the past.

I was waiting for my money. I wasn't wearing a sweatshirt.

They were looking in a window. They weren't watching me.

Was she wearing jeans? Yes, she was.
No, she wasn't.

Were they watching you? Yes, they were.
No, they weren't.

What was she wearing? What were they doing?

4a Your life What were you doing at these times?

- 1 I was lying in bed at seven o'clock this morning.
- 1 at seven o'clock this morning
- 2 at 9.30 last night
- 3 at 10.30 last Saturday morning
- 4 an hour ago
- 5 at 4.30 yesterday afternoon
- 6 at two o'clock last Sunday afternoon

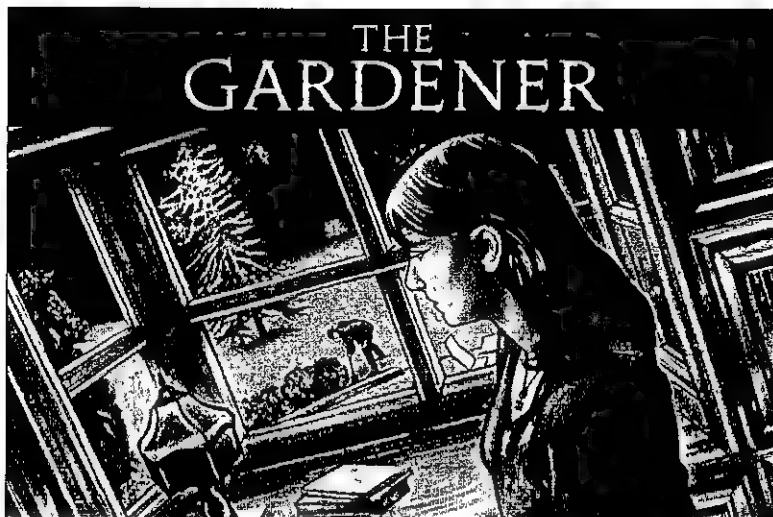
b Ask and answer.

- A What were you doing at seven o'clock this morning?
B I was lying in bed.

1a 23.1 Read and listen to the story. Who are these people?

- Beatrix – Fiona – Daniel – Michael

b Which of the people are in the pictures?



My name's Beatrix and I'm from the USA. Four years ago we were on holiday in Ireland. We were staying at a beautiful old hotel.

On the first afternoon, my husband and our two children were playing tennis, but I was having a rest in our room. I ordered some tea from the restaurant. While I was waiting for the tea, I looked out of the window. I saw an old man in the middle of the garden. He was wearing a jacket and a black hat and he was digging.

While I was watching the man, someone knocked at the door. I opened the door and Daniel, a young waiter, came in with my tea. I looked out of the window again but the old man wasn't there.

'The garden's beautiful,' I said. 'How many gardeners have you got here?'

'Just one,' said Daniel. 'But she isn't here today.'

'She?' I said. 'But I was watching your gardener when you knocked at the door. He was an old man.'

'No,' he said. 'Our gardener's a young woman. Her name's Fiona.'

Later, we were going to the restaurant for dinner. We were walking along a corridor. There were some old photographs on the walls. When I saw one of the photographs, I stopped. It was the old man in the garden.

Just then Daniel came out of the restaurant. While he was walking past us, I pointed to the photograph and I said, 'That's the old man in the garden. He was wearing that jacket and hat.'

'That's impossible!' said Daniel. 'That's Michael. He was the gardener here, but he died fifty years ago!'



2a Read the text again. Answer the questions.

- Where is Beatrix from?
- Where is the hotel?
- Who was Beatrix on holiday with?
- Where was her husband that afternoon?
- Where was the old man?
- What was he doing?
- Why did Daniel go to the hotel room?
- What did they see later?

b Who says these things in the text? Why?

'She?'

'That's impossible!'

Language note

Past continuous and past simple

While I **was waiting**, I **saw** a man.

I **was waiting** (past continuous)

I **saw** a man (past simple)

When I **saw** the photograph, I **stopped**.

I **saw** the photograph (past simple)

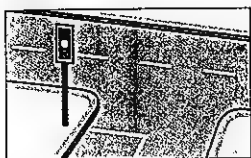
I **stopped** (past simple)

3 Put the verbs into the correct tense.

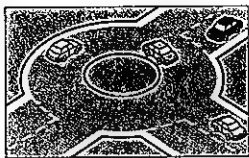
- While Beatrix was having a rest, she decided to order some tea. (have/decide)
- She _____ the tea and then she _____ the phone down. (order/put)
- While she _____ the tea, she _____ someone in the garden. (wait for/see)
- While she _____ the old man, Daniel _____ with the tea. (watch/arrive)
- While Beatrix and her family _____ to dinner, they _____ some old photographs. (go/see)
- When Beatrix _____ the photo of the old man, she _____. (see/stop)

4 Writing Write a story about an unusual event. Answer the questions.

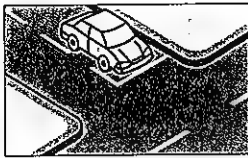
- Where and when did it happen?
- What were you doing?
- What happened?
- What happened next?
- What was the result?

1 **24.1** Listen and repeat.

1 traffic lights

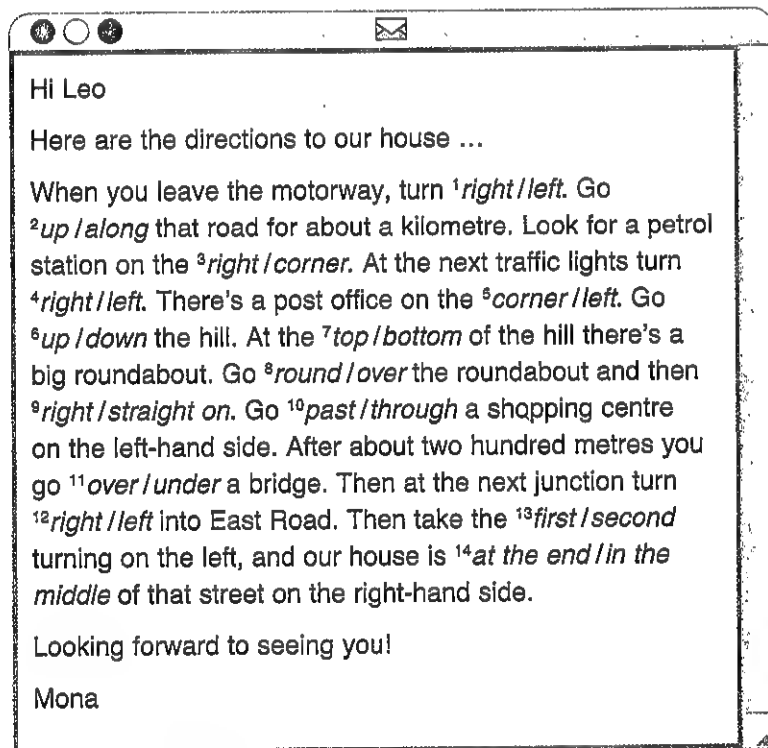
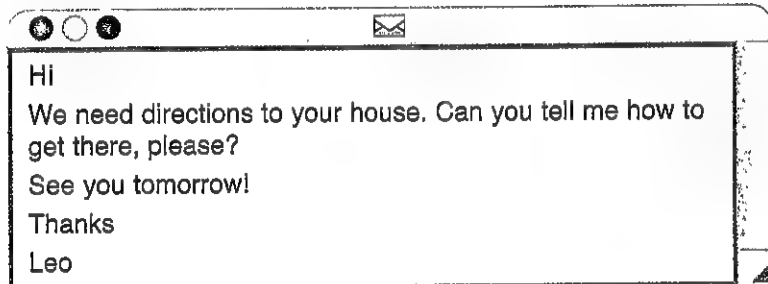


2 a roundabout



3 a junction

2a Read the emails.

b **24.2** Listen. Choose the correct words.

3 You're in the car with Leo. Tell him what to do next.

- 1 Turn left and go along that road for about a kilometre.
- 1 You're leaving the motorway.
- 2 You're going past the petrol station.
- 3 You're coming to the roundabout.
- 4 You're going past the shopping centre.
- 5 You're turning into East Road.

4 Complete the expressions.

Giving directions

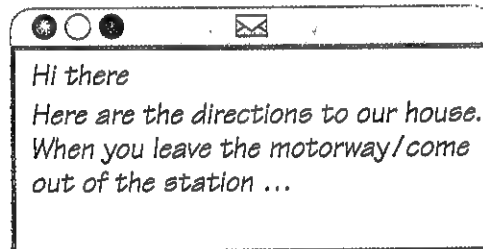
Can you tell me _____ to get there?
Here are the _____ to our house.
Go along that road _____ about a km.
Look _____ a petrol station.
There's a post office _____ the corner.
_____ about two hundred metres ...
Take _____ second turning on the left.

5 Work with a partner. Make conversations to get from your language school to:

- the post office
- the (bus) station
- the nearest cash machine
- the cinema.

A Can you tell me how to get to the post office, please?

B Yes. Go ...

6 **Write an email with directions to your home.**

English in the world

Speed limits

In Britain and the USA, speeds are given in miles per hour (mph).

(1 mile = 1.6 kilometres)

British speed limits are:

70 top speed limit on motorways.

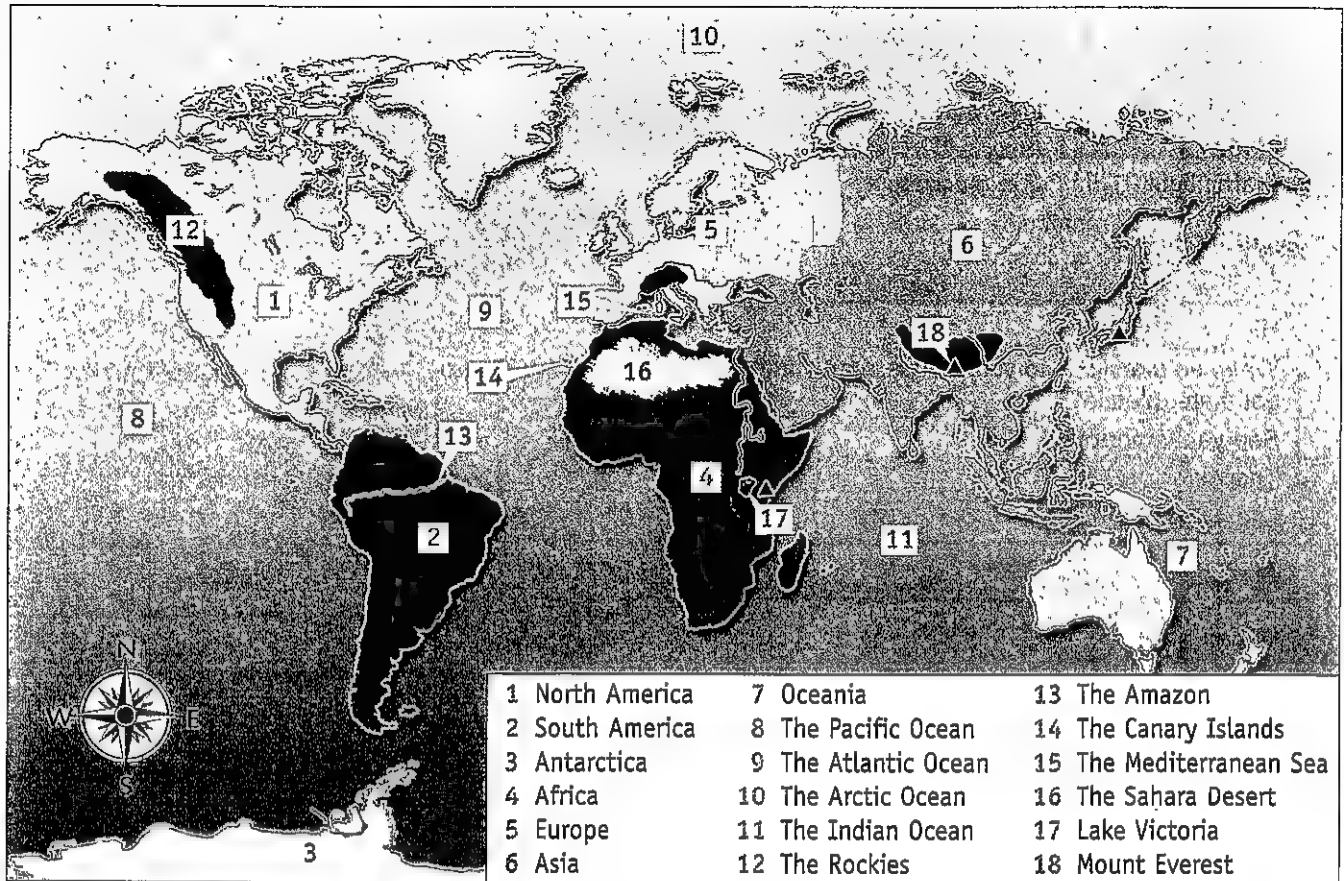
60 top speed limit on other roads.

30 the normal speed limit in towns.

In the USA, the top speed limit is usually 55 mph, but it goes up to 65 mph on some Interstate Highways.

Compare this with your country.



1 **25.1** Listen and repeat.**Articles with geographical names**

Egypt is in Africa.

NOT ~~The~~ Egypt is in the Africa.

The Atlantic (Ocean)

The Sahara (Desert)

BUT

Lake Victoria

Mount Everest

2 Which continent are the places in?

1 The Rockies are in North America.

1 The Rockies

2 France

3 The River Amazon

4 Mount Everest

5 New Zealand

6 Lake Victoria

7 The South Pole

8 Canada

3a **25.2** Listen. Match the people with the places.

1 Jules and Lidia sailed	across	North America.
2 Pedro flew		Europe.
3 Timo and Selma cycled		Africa.
4 Akane ran		the Pacific.

b Listen again. Where did they start and finish?

4 **Your life** Which places in the world do you want to visit? Why? Discuss your ideas with a partner.**Pronunciation****Word stress 3**1 **25.3** Listen. Is the stress on the first or the second syllable?

1 Africa

2 The Sahara

3 America

4 The Amazon

5 The Rockies

6 The Pacific

7 Antarctica

8 Europe

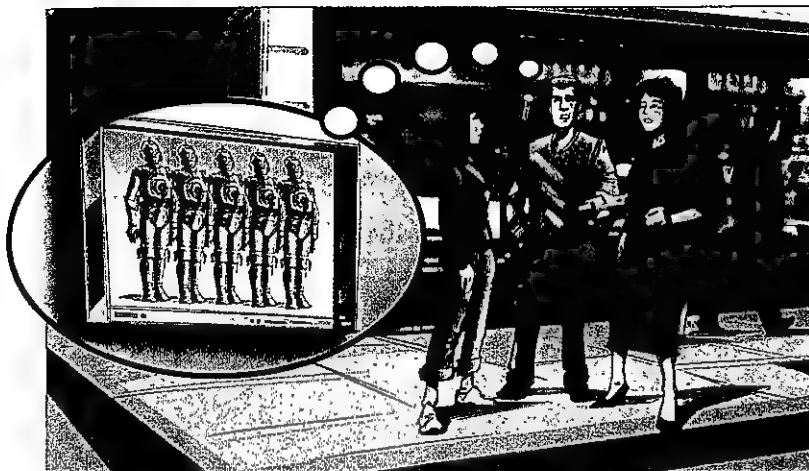
9 Asia

10 The Atlantic

2 **25.4** Listen, check, and repeat.3 Listen again. Underline the syllables with the schwa /ə/ sound.

26 GRAMMAR

1a 26.1 Read and listen.



Lucy Guess what! Jordan's going to be on TV on Friday.

Sarah Really? Are you going to be on the news?

Jordan No, I'm not. Don't you remember? I had a part in a TV advert in April.

Sarah Oh, yes. I remember. What time is it going to be on?

Lucy About 9.30. We're going to watch it at my place.
Do you and Peter want to join us for a drink first?

Sarah Thanks. Great. Oh, I can't believe it. I'm going to see Jordan on TV.

Jordan Well, you aren't going to see me exactly. ...
I'm one of the robots!

b Work in a group of three. Practise the conversation.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 107.

going to: statements

We use going to for:

intentions We're going to watch it at my place.

a definite future Jordan's going to be on TV on Friday.

I'm going to watch a film. I'm not going to watch a film.

He's going to be on TV. He isn't going to be on TV.

We're going to have a party. We aren't going to have a party.

3 Correct these statements.

1 Jordan isn't going to be in a film. He's going to be in a TV advert.

1 Jordan's going to be in a film.

2 They're going to watch it at Jordan's place.

3 It's going to be on at eight o'clock.

4 They're going to have a party first.

5 Jordan's going to be the star.

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 108.

going to: questions and short answers

Is he going to be on the news? Yes, he is.
No, he isn't.

Are you going to watch it? Yes, I am.
No, I'm not.

Where are you going to watch it?

5a 26.2 Listen. What are the people going to do this evening? Match the names with the activities.

- 1 Andy e
- 2 Shana and Omar ---
- 3 Rosie ---
- 4 Bruno and Martina ---
- 5 Bradley ---
- 6 Emma and Roy ---

- a have a meal with friends
- b play tennis
- c send some emails
- d go to the gym
- e have an early night
- f watch a DVD

b Ask and answer about the people.

A Is Andy going to play tennis?

B No, he isn't. He's going to have an early night.

5a Speaking Are you going to do these things this evening?

I'm going to watch TV.

OR I'm not going to watch TV.

- 1 watch TV
- 2 go out
- 3 listen to some music
- 4 use the computer
- 5 do some work
- 6 do some exercise
- 7 cook dinner
- 8 read something

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer. Try to find some more information.

A Are you going to watch TV?

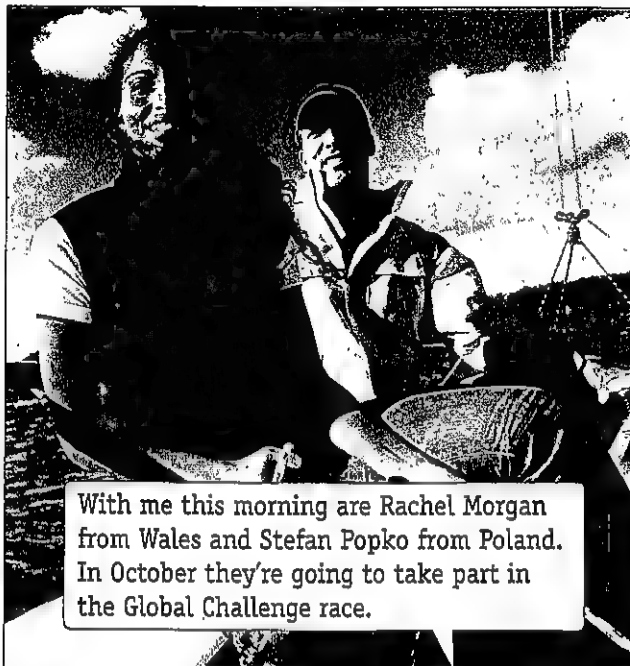
B Yes, I am.

A What are you going to watch?

27 SKILLS

1 Look at the picture. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who are the two people?
- 2 Where are they from?
- 3 What are they going to do?



With me this morning are Rachel Morgan from Wales and Stefan Popko from Poland. In October they're going to take part in the Global Challenge race.

2 27.1 Listen. Choose the correct endings.

- 1 They're going to travel in
 - a a yacht.
 - b a small boat.
 - c a speedboat.
- 2 They're going to sail
 - a to every continent in the world.
 - b from the Arctic to the Antarctic.
 - c round the world.
- 3 The race is unusual because they're going to travel
 - a from north to south.
 - b from west to east.
 - c from east to west.
- 4 The people in the race are from
 - a all over the world.
 - b several European countries.
 - c the UK and Poland.
- 5 They're going to do the race because
 - a they want to break the record.
 - b they want to.
 - c they want to test a new yacht.

3 Listen again. What do these numbers refer to?

They're going to travel over 56,000 kilometres.

56,000 150 12 18 22 1

Language note Large numbers

We use a comma to separate large numbers.

56,000 kilometres

We say:

fifty-six thousand kilometres

NOT ~~fifty-six thousands of kilometres.~~

4 Listen again. Draw the route they are going to take.



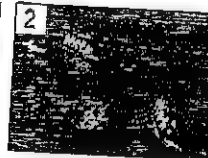
5 Writing Complete the summary of Rachel and Stefan's journey.

In October, ¹_____ and ²_____ are going to take part in the ³_____. Rachel is from ⁴_____ and Stefan ⁵_____. They're going to sail ⁶_____ in a ⁷_____. People normally travel ⁸_____ to ⁹_____ because the wind ¹⁰_____, but Rachel and Stefan are going to travel ¹¹_____. They're going to travel ¹²_____ kms and it's going to take ¹³_____. There are going to be ¹⁴_____ yachts in the race with ¹⁵_____ people on each yacht. The people are going to be from ¹⁶_____. Each yacht is ¹⁷_____ long and the people can only take ¹⁸_____.

English in the world

Races

These are some famous races in Britain.



- 1 Every year, about 30,000 people take part in the London Marathon.
- 2 There is a boat race between Oxford and Cambridge universities on the River Thames every year.
- 3 In November, the London-to-Brighton rally is for vintage cars.

What famous races are there in your country?

- 1 Look back at Episodes 2 and 3. What happened?
- 2 **28.1** Read and listen to the story. Why is Sarah happy? Is Peter happy too?
- 3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?
 - 1 Peter and Sarah are going to get married in June.
 - 2 Sarah's family lives in Singapore.
 - 3 Peter's parents live in Australia.
 - 4 Peter doesn't want to get married.
 - 5 Peter's company sold its old offices.
 - 6 Starlight Properties bought the building.
 - 7 They want to open a supermarket there.
 - 8 The new café is going to be next to The Coffee Shop.

4a Complete the expressions.

Expressing doubt

We don't k_____w yet.
 We aren't s_____e.
 M_____be ...
 Yes, p_____y.

- b Work with a partner. Read the questions. Use the expressions above to give appropriate answers.
 - A Where are Sarah and Peter going to get married?
 - B We don't know yet.
 - 1 Where are Sarah and Peter going to get married?
 - 2 Are they going to live in Singapore?
 - 3 Are Lucy and Jordan going to get married?
 - 4 Are Starlight Properties going to open an Internet café?
 - 5 Is Peter going to tell Ryan and Cindy?
 - 6 What are Ryan and Cindy going to do?
- 5 Language check. Underline examples of going to in the story.
 - 6 Work with a partner. Practise the story.



Sarah I've got some news. Peter and I are going to get married!

Lucy Oh, congratulations! When's the wedding?

Sarah We don't know yet. It's going to be complicated, because my family's in Singapore and Peter's parents live in the USA.

Lucy Yes, I see the problem. Where are you going to live?

Sarah We aren't sure. Maybe in Singapore.

Lucy Well, it's wonderful news. I bet Peter's happy!



Jordan Congratulations, Peter.

Peter What? Oh, yes. Thanks.

Jordan You don't sound very happy.

Peter About getting married? Oh, no. That's great.

Jordan So, what's wrong?

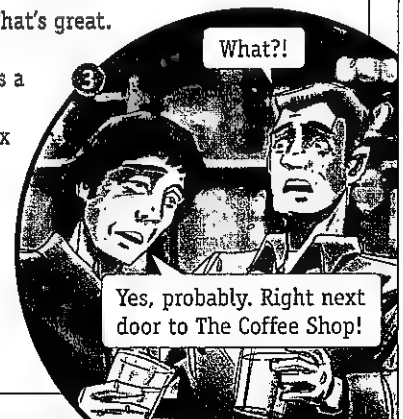
Peter You know that we sold our offices a few weeks ago.

Jordan Yes, to Starlight Properties. We fix their computers, you know.

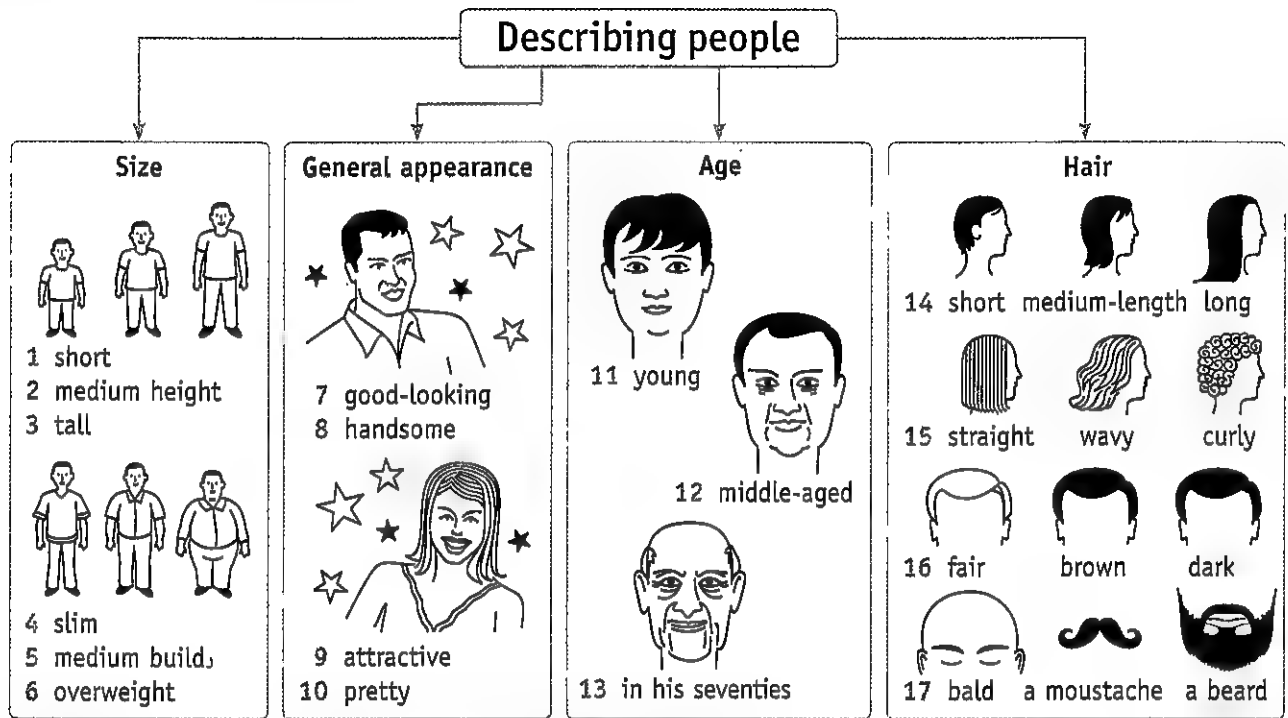
Peter Really? Well, anyway, it seems they aren't going to use the building for offices.

Jordan Oh? What are they going to do, then?

Peter People say that they're going to open a big Internet café.



1 29.1 Listen and repeat.

**Exercise 1: Descriptions**

1 We ask: What does he/she look like? How tall is he/she?

2 We often use modifiers in descriptions:

very tall

quite tall

fairly tall

not very tall

3 We normally use:

attractive, pretty and beautiful for women
good-looking and handsome for men.2a 29.2 Listen. Which words do the people use? Underline the correct words.

1 Imran's new boss:

- overweight/slim
- tall/short
- in her thirties/middle-aged
- medium-length/long hair
- straight/wavy hair
- dark/blonde hair
- not very attractive/pretty

2 The police suspect:

- middle-aged/young
- tall/medium height
- slim/overweight
- straight/curly hair
- fair/black hair
- brown/blue eyes
- a moustache/a beard

b Listen again. What modifiers do the people use?

She's quite slim.

3 Speaking Describe these people to a partner. Can he/she guess who it is?

- someone in your class
- a film star
- a famous sportsperson
- a character from the *That's Life!* story

He's in his thirties. He's tall and quite slim. He's good-looking. He's got short, dark hair and blue eyes. He's also got a beard.

4 **Your life** Write a description of yourself.**English in the world****Tactful language**

When we describe people, we normally try to be tactful and polite.

We don't say:**We say:**

thin → very slim

fat → a bit overweight

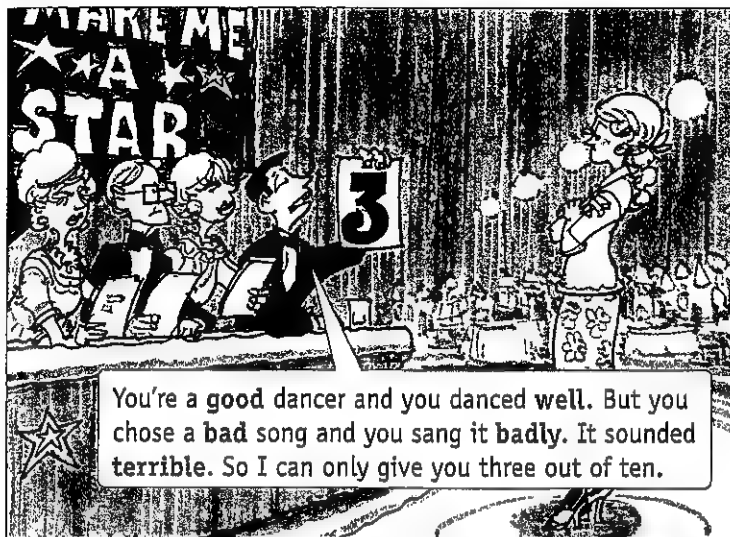
ugly → not very good-looking

old → in his (seventies), etc.

Compare this with your language.

30 GRAMMAR

1 30.1 Read and listen.



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 108.

Adjectives and adverbs

1 An adjective describes a noun:

You chose a **bad** song.

adjective noun

An adverb describes a verb:

You sang **badly**.

verb adverb

2 Adjectives quick nice easy good fast

Adverbs quickly nicely easily well fast

3 You danced well. NOT You well danced.

You cooked everything perfectly.

NOT You cooked perfectly everything.

3 30.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

1 She's a good driver.

She drives well.

4 Put the words in the correct order.

1 You're a great dancer.

1 great a dancer you're

2 very he well cooks

3 guitar you the badly play

4 a meal it delicious was

5 the sang perfectly she song

6 beautifully he piano the plays

7 song a good chose you

8 waiter he's excellent an

5a Choose the correct word.

1 Are you a good / well cook?

2 Do you drive careful / carefully?

3 Do you often sleep bad / badly?

4 Are you a nice / nicely person?

5 Do you wake up easy / easily?

6 Do you walk quick / quickly?

b Ask your partner the questions.

Language note Verb + adjective

We use an adjective after these verbs:

be, look, taste, sound.

It sounded terrible.

NOT It sounded terribly.

It looked good. NOT It looked well.

6a Think of a thing, person, or place for these descriptions.

1 I think this book looks interesting.

1 looks interesting

2 looks dangerous

3 tastes delicious

4 tastes awful

5 sounds beautiful

6 sounds terrible

7 is easy

8 is boring

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

7 Your life Write six sentences about yourself. Use these words.

good well bad badly fast slowly

1 31.1 Listen and repeat.



1 shy



2 confident



3 generous



4 selfish



5 hard-working



6 lazy



7 quiet



8 noisy

2a Read the questionnaire. Work with a partner. Ask the questions.

A Do you like getting up late?

B Yes, I do. / I don't mind it. / No, I don't.

What kind of person are you?

Do you like these things?

	I like it	I don't mind it	I don't like it
1 getting up late	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 writing emails	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 eating new kinds of food	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 going to parties	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 travelling	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 talking on the phone	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 shopping	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 meeting new people	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9 working with other people	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10 dancing	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Score: 3 for every 'I like it'
 1 for every 'I don't mind it'
 0 for every 'I don't like it'

b Calculate your score.

3a 31.2 Read and listen. Write the missing words from exercise 1.

21-30: You love talking and having a good time. You look ¹ *confident*, but you hate being alone. You're usually ² _____. You don't like working at a desk and you're sometimes a bit ³ _____. You do things quickly and you don't always finish jobs completely.

11-20: You like talking to people, but you don't mind being alone. You like meeting people and going to parties, but you often leave early. You're ⁴ _____. You can do things easily and you work fast, so you prefer working alone. You can sometimes be a bit ⁵ _____.

0-10: You're quite ⁶ _____ and you like a ⁷ _____ life. You prefer being alone or with a very good friend. You don't like talking to people and you hate ⁸ _____ people. You love reading books. You work hard, but you do things slowly and carefully.

b What kind of person are you? Do you agree with the result?

Language note

Expressing likes and dislikes

☺	I love	
↑	I like	talking.
	I prefer	being alone.
	I don't mind	dancing.
↓	I hate	shopping.
☹	I can't stand	

4a Writing Write a paragraph about your likes and dislikes. Use this model.

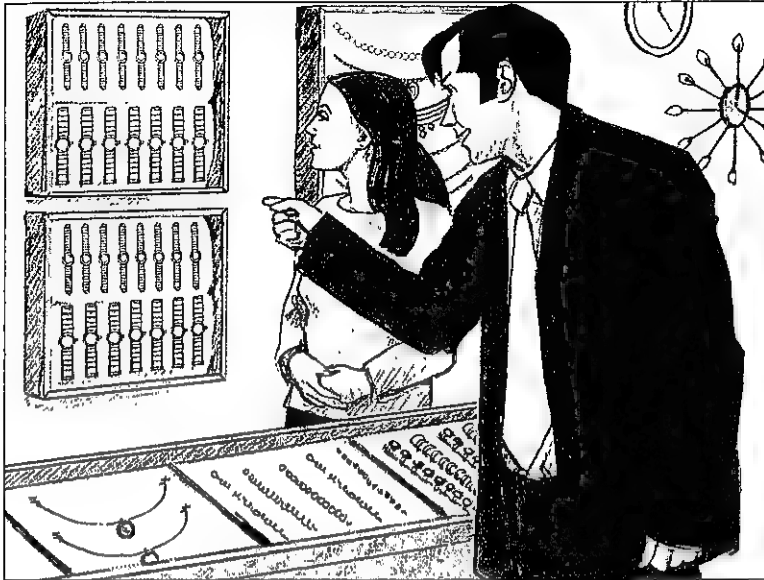
I love ... I like ... , too, but I prefer ...
 I don't mind ... , but I hate ... , and I can't stand ...

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

A I love cooking. Do you?

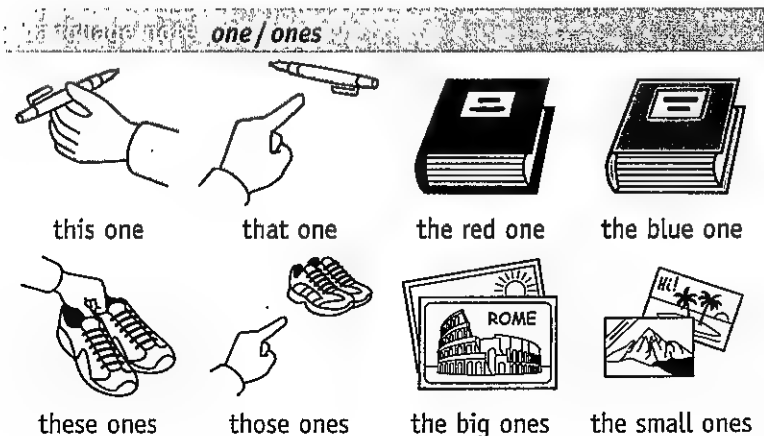
B I don't mind it. / No, I can't stand it.

1a 32.1 Read and listen.



- A Can I help you?
 B Yes. How much are those watches, please?
 A The gold ones?
 B No, the silver ones.
 A The small one is €65 and the large one is €80.
 B Can I have a look at the large one, please?
 A Certainly. Here you are.
 B Thank you. Hmm, it's a bit big.
 A Would you like to see the other one?
 B Yes, please. Yes. I think I prefer this one. I'll take it. How much is it again?
 A €65. Anything else?
 B No, thank you.
 A That's €65, then, please.

b Work with a partner. Practise the conversation.



2 Ask and answer. Use the cues.

- 1 A Do you like this mobile?
 B I prefer the other one.
 1 this mobile/other
 2 those earrings/gold
 3 these bags/those
 4 that camera/small
 5 this watch/black
 6 these shoes/brown
 7 this umbrella/large
 8 these sunglasses/other

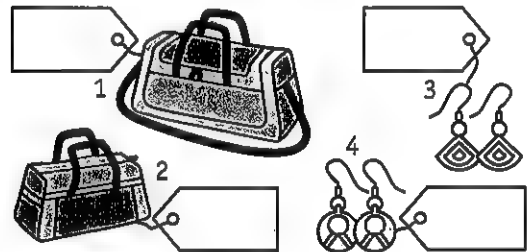
3 Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions In a shop

- Can I _____ you?
 How _____ are those watches?
 Can I have a _____ at that one, please?
 Would you _____ to see the other one?
 I think I _____ this one.
 I'll take _____.

4 32.2 Listen to two conversations.

- 1 How much is each thing?
 2 Which things do the people buy?



5 Work with a partner. Use the things in exercise 4. Make the conversations.

Pronunciation

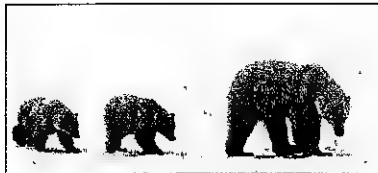
Sentence stress

32.3 Listen and repeat. Use the same rhythm.

- 1 How much are those bags?
 How much are those bags over there?
 2 Can we have a look
 Can we have a look at the large one?
 3 Would you like to see
 Would you like to see the other one?

1 **33.1** Listen and repeat.

1 a sports programme



2 a documentary



3 a soap (opera)



4 a sitcom



5 the news



6 the weather forecast



7 a police drama



8 a hospital drama



9 a film/movie



10 a cartoon



11 a reality TV show



12 a chat show



13 a game show



14 a TV advert

2 Give some examples of programmes from your country.

Word building 2

This programme is about music.

It's a music programme.

This drama is about a hospital.

It's a hospital drama.

3 **33.2** Listen. What kinds of programme do the people like and dislike? Complete the table.

	✓	X
Bob	<i>the news, the ...</i>	
Anna		
Julie		
Ivor		

4 **You Talk** Work with a partner. Talk about the programmes that you like/dislike. Use these questions.

- 1 Do you watch a lot of TV?
- 2 What kinds of programme do you like?
- 3 What programmes don't you like?
- 4 Do you ever watch ... ?
- 5 What's your favourite programme?
- 6 Who's your favourite newsreader?
- 7 What did you watch last night?
- 8 What are you going to watch tonight?

English in the world

TV channels

In Britain there are three kinds of TV channels:

- 1 The BBC (British Broadcasting Corporation) gets its money from the government. Everybody with a TV pays an annual licence fee.
- 2 Commercial TV channels like ITV and Channel 4 get most of their money from adverts.
- 3 Cable and satellite TV have hundreds of channels. You pay a monthly subscription to get these channels. Most of them have adverts, too.

Compare this with your country.

34 GRAMMAR

1 34.1 Read and listen.



Lucy Oh, it's the lottery. I must check my ticket. ...
No, nothing this week.

Peter Have you ever won anything on the lottery?

Lucy Yes, I have. I've had a few small prizes. Jordan's been very lucky.

Peter Really?

Lucy Yes. He hasn't won millions of pounds, but he's received two big prizes of about £1,000 each.

Peter Wow! That's good.

Lucy What about you? Have you ever won anything on the lottery?

Peter No, I haven't.

Lucy Oh, dear. Well, you've been very unlucky.

Peter No, not really. I've never bought a ticket.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 109.

Present perfect

1 We use the present perfect for experiences in our lives up to now. We are not interested in when these things happened.

I've had a few small prizes. (up to now)

He's been very lucky. (up to now)

2 I've received a prize. I haven't received a prize.

He's won the lottery. He hasn't won the lottery.

3 Have you ever done these things?

1 I've been on TV. OR I haven't been on TV or the radio.

1 be on TV or the radio

2 meet a famous person

3 fall in love

4 miss a plane

5 save someone's life

6 steal anything

7 write a poem

8 forget someone's name

Language note Experiences

When we talk about experiences, we often use *ever* and *never*.

Have you ever won anything? (in your life)

I've never bought a ticket. (in my life)

When we're talking about experiences, we use *have/has been* as the present perfect of *go*.

She's been to China. She's gone to China.

←-----→
(She's back now) (She's in China now)

I've never been to China.

NOT I've never gone to China.

4 Write six sentences.

– three things that you have done

– three things that you have never done

I've been to the USA.

I've never ridden a horse.

5 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 109.

Present perfect

Questions and short answers

Have you ever missed a plane? Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

Has she ever been on TV? Yes, she has.

No, she hasn't.

6 34.2 Drill. Listen. Make the questions.

1 win a prize

Have you ever won a prize?

2 go to Africa

Have you ever been to Africa?

7a Your life Work with a partner. Ask questions. Use the cues in exercise 3.

A *Have you ever been on TV?*

B *Yes, I have./No, I haven't.*

Work with a new partner. Ask about your first partners.

A *Has Carla ever been on TV?*



B *Yes, she has./No, she hasn't.*

1 Read the news stories.

000

THE NEWS

TODAY'S HEADLINES

- 1 The heads of government of the ^{EU}G8 countries have arrived in ^{Budapest}Berlin for their latest meeting.
- 2 Thieves have stolen money and a large number of diamonds from a jewellery shop in Paris.
- 3  A tropical storm has hit the coast of North America. Strong winds have destroyed several buildings. More than a hundred people have lost their lives.
- 4 Four people have died in a fire at a house in Glasgow.
- 5 There has been a serious accident on the M5 motorway. A lorry has crashed into a bridge. The police have closed the motorway in both directions between junctions 5 and 8.
- 6  The comedy programme, *The Box*, has won the Independent award for the best TV programme of the year.
- 7 Alan Jones, star of the TV soap opera *The Avenue*, has married the programme's producer, Rajni Sekar.

2 35.1 Listen. There are two mistakes in each story. Underline the parts that are incorrect.

3a Correct the stories. Read them to your partner.

b Listen again and check.

Language note: Present perfect with present result

We use the present perfect for a past action with a result in the present. We don't know when the action happened.

Past action

The police have closed the motorway.

Thieves have stolen some diamonds.

Present result

You can't use the motorway now.

The diamonds aren't in the bank now.

4 Change the newspaper headlines into full sentences.

1 Some thieves have stolen a famous painting.

1 Thieves steal famous painting

2 POLICE CLOSE BRIDGE

3 STORM HITS WEST COAST

4 Fire destroys cinema

5 LOCAL TEAM WINS CUP

6 Lorry kills dog

7 FILM STAR VISITS SCHOOL

8 Prime Minister flies to Tokyo

5a Writing What's in the news today? Write the headlines for three news stories.

b Work in a group. Present your headlines as a news programme.

Pronunciation

The letter o

1 35.2 Listen and repeat.

/ɒ/ /ɔ:/ /əʊ/ /ʌ/
shop storm stolen money

2a Put these words in the correct column above.

more won comedy both sport
programme government tropical
closed short strong forecast
love lorry broken some

b 35.3 Listen and check.

c Listen again and repeat.

- 1 Look back at Episodes 3 and 4. What happened?
- 2 **36.1** Read and listen to the story. What is 'the news'?
- 3 Choose the correct words.
 - 1 The party is at *Lucy's/Jordan's* place.
 - 2 The actors and actresses are near the *kitchen/bedroom*.
 - 3 Jordan met them when he was making *an advert/a film*.
 - 4 Anna Harlow is wearing a *black/red* dress.
 - 5 She arrived with *Lucy/Russell*.
 - 6 Russell met Anna *inside/outside* The Coffee Shop.
 - 7 Ryan looks *happy/unhappy*.
 - 8 Ryan and Cindy *know/don't know* about the new café.

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions

Expressing opinions 1

Making statements

I th_____k ...

I bel_____ve ...

Responding

(Yes,) I think s_____.

(No,) I don't think s_____.

- b Work with a partner. Use the expressions above. Express your opinions about these things:

A *Reality TV shows are awful*

B *Yes, I think so, too.*

OR

B *No, I don't think so.*

- reality TV shows
- today's news
- the government
- mobile phones
- football
- the news about the café

- 5 Language check. Underline examples of the present perfect in the story.

- 6 Work in a group. Practise the story.

Jordan's having a party in his flat. Sarah and Peter have just arrived.



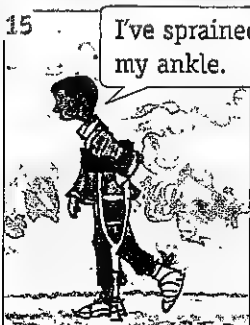
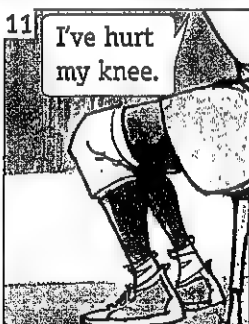
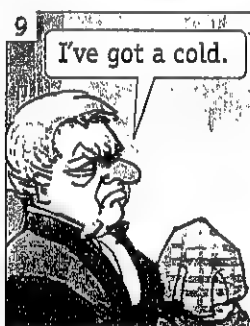
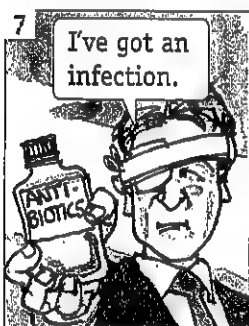
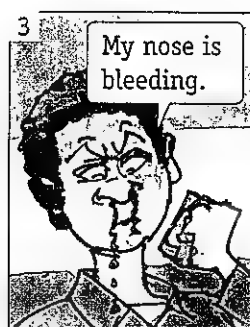
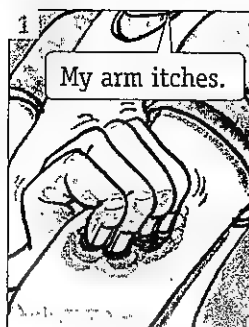
- Sarah Who are those people near the kitchen? They look very stylish.
 Jordan They're actors and actresses.
 Peter Did you meet them when you were making that TV advert?
 Jordan Yes, that's right.
 Sarah Anybody famous?
 Jordan No, I don't think so.
 Peter I think I've seen that blonde woman in the red dress before.
 Jordan She isn't an actress. She arrived with Russell.
 Sarah Oh, is that Anna Harlow?
 Jordan Yes, I think so.
 Peter Who's Anna Harlow?
 Sarah Russell met her outside The Coffee Shop. I believe she wants to open a shop round here.



- Peter Hi, Lucy. Are Cindy and Ryan here?
 Lucy Yes, they are.
 Sarah Ryan's over there, but I can't see Cindy.
 Peter Perhaps she's on the balcony.
 Lucy Yes, maybe.
 Sarah Ryan looks happy.
 Peter Well, he probably hasn't heard about the new café.
 Lucy Well, he and Cindy aren't going to like it when they hear the news.



What news is that, Lucy?

1 **37.1** Listen and repeat.

2 What other words or expressions do you know for ... ?

- parts of the body
- illnesses

Possessive adjectives

My head itches.
I've hurt my ankle.
His finger is swollen.
She's cut her thumb.
I've got a bruise on my arm.
You've got a rash on your hand.

3 Say what's wrong. Use the cues.

- 1 She's bruised her knee. Her knee's painful.
1 She/bruise/knee. Knee/painful
2 I/rash/leg. Leg/itch
3 He/sprain/wrist. Wrist/swollen
4 You/cut/finger. Finger/bleeding
5 She/burn/hand. Hand/painful
6 I/bruise/thumb. Thumb/swollen

4 **37.2** Listen. Write the problem next to the correct remedy.

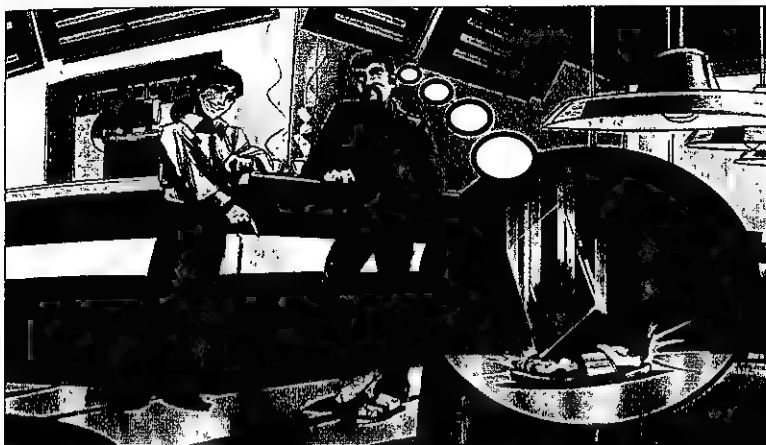
Problem	Remedy
	a ice
	b plasters
	c cream
a headache	d painkillers
	e cold water
	f tissues

5 Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use the table in exercise 4.

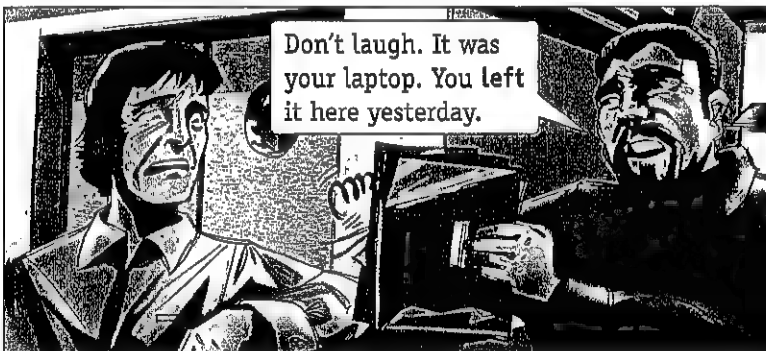
- A What's the matter?
B I've got a headache.
A Oh dear. Here, I've got some painkillers.
B Thanks.

38 GRAMMAR

1a 38.1 Read and listen.



Peter Hello, Ryan. What have you done to your foot?
 Ryan I've bruised my big toe.
 Peter How did you do that?
 Ryan I dropped a laptop on it this morning.
 Peter Really? Ha, ha!



b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 109.

Present perfect and past simple

1 We use the present perfect for:

- a past action with a result in the present. We're interested in the result, NOT the action:
 I've bruised my big toe. ----> (My toe hurts now.)
- experiences up to the present:
 I've never had flu. ----> (up to now)

2 We use the past simple for:

- a completed action in the past. We're interested in the action itself:
 I dropped a laptop on it.
- the actual time of the event:
 I broke my arm last year. NOT I've broken my arm last year.

3 38.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

- 1 I've broken your laptop.
 I broke it yesterday.
- 2 I've hurt my foot.
 I hurt it yesterday.

4a 38.3 Listen to three conversations.

Answer these questions each time.

- 1 What has he/she done?
- 2 How did he/she do it?
- 3 When did it happen?

b Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use your answers to the questions. Follow the pattern.

- A What have you done to your elbow?
 B I've sprained it.
 A How did you do that?
 B I fell downstairs.
 A Really? When did it happen?
 B On Thursday.

5a Speaking Tick ✓ the things you have done.

- had flu
- broken a bone
- lost some money
- fallen off a bike
- dropped something on your foot
- seen an accident
- sprained your ankle
- left something on a bus or train.

b Ask and answer with a partner. Try to find some more information. Use these questions:

- How did you ... ?
 When did you ... ?
 Why were you ... ?
 What did you ... ?
 Did you ... ?
 Were you ... ?

- A Have you ever had flu?
 B Yes, I have.
 A When did you have it?
 B When I was fifteen.
 A Did you stay in bed?

1 39.1 Read and listen to the text.

Advice for travellers

It's holiday time again. Here's some advice to make your holiday easier.

6 Six weeks before you go

Have you had any necessary vaccinations? If not, see your doctor. Have you checked your passport? Is it still valid? If not, get a new one now.

Packing

1 Don't forget to take:

- medical items:
 - painkillers
 - plasters
 - something for insect bites
 - sunscreen
- toiletry items:
 - toothbrushes
 - toothpaste
 - a hairbrush
- glasses and sunglasses
- your mobile phone and charger
- keys for the luggage

2 Don't put these things in your suitcase:

- any personal medicine (tablets, etc.)
- your passport and tickets
- money or credit cards
- jewellery
- a camera or camcorder
- a child's favourite toy

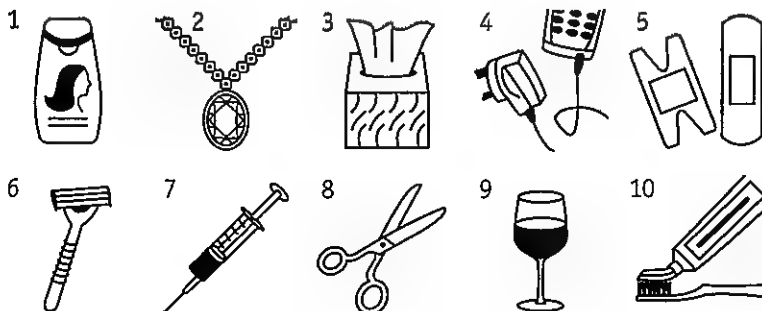
3 Don't put these things in your hand luggage:

- scissors
- knives
- more than one book or magazine. (They're heavy.)

→ On the plane

- 1 Wear comfortable clothes.
- 2 Avoid alcohol and coffee. They cause dehydration. It's best to drink plenty of water.
- 3 Don't eat a lot.
- 4 Don't stay in your seat for a long time. Try to take some exercise. It's a good idea to get up and walk every hour. When you are sitting down, move your legs and feet.

2 Which of these things does the text mention? What does it say about each item?



3 What does the text say about ... ?

- books
- water
- exercise

Language note Giving advice

- Wear (comfortable clothes).
- Don't (eat a lot).
- Avoid (alcohol).
- Don't forget to ...
- It's a good idea to ...
- It's best to ...
- Try to ...

4 Your life What do you always take when you travel? Name six things.

5 Writing Write some advice for travellers to your country. Follow the pattern. Use the expressions in the Language note.

Here's some advice for people coming to _____.

Things to pack

- 1 It's a good idea to ...
- 2 Don't forget to ...

When you're here

- 1 Try to ...
- 2 It's best to ...
- 3 Wear ...
- 4 Don't eat ...

Pronunciation

Plural -es endings

1 39.2 Listen and repeat.

/z/

tissues

/vz/

toothbrushes

2a Put these words in the correct column above.

- sunglasses
- knives
- magazines
- boxes
- sandwiches
- bottles
- phones
- offices
- shoes
- purses
- exercises
- clothes

b 39.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

Now I can ...
understand and give advice.

1 40.1 Read and listen.



Doctor Good morning. What seems to be the problem?

Patient I've got a pain in my chest.

Doctor I see. When did it start?

Patient Oh, about three days ago.

Doctor Can I just have a look at it? Where does it hurt?

Patient Here in my chest near my left shoulder.

Doctor Can you lift your arm, please? Does that hurt?

Patient Yes, it does.

Doctor Well, I think you've pulled a muscle.

Patient Oh, that's good.

Doctor Yes, but we'd better check your heart, too. Can you make an appointment with the nurse for a check-up, please?

Patient OK.

Doctor In the meantime, don't lift anything heavy, and move your arm slowly.

Patient Yes, OK. Thank you. Goodbye.

Doctor Goodbye.

2 Read the conversation again. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 The patient has come to see the doctor, because
a his shoulder is swollen. b he's got a pain in his chest.
- 2 The problem started
a yesterday. b three days ago.
- 3 The doctor thinks
a he's pulled a muscle. b he's had a heart attack.
- 4 The patient has to
a see the doctor again. b see the nurse for a check-up.
- 5 In the meantime, he has to
a move his arm slowly. b lift heavy things.

3 Practise the conversation with a partner.

4 Complete the expressions.

At the doctor's

What seems to _____ the problem?

When did it _____?

Can I just _____ a look at it?

Where _____ it hurt?

We'd _____ check your heart.

In _____ meantime, ...

5a 40.2 Listen to two conversations.

Answer the questions for each one.

- 1 What's the problem?
- 2 When did the problem start?
- 3 What does the doctor think it is?
- 4 What is the treatment?

b Work with a partner. Use the information from exercise 5a. Make the conversations.

English in the world
Health services

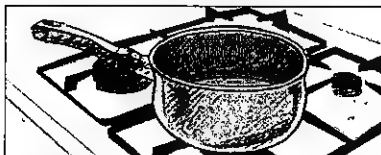


Britain has a **National Health Service** (the NHS). All treatment with a doctor or in a hospital is free. If the doctor gives you a **prescription** for some medicine, you pay a **fixed amount** for it. Old people, children, and unemployed people don't pay.

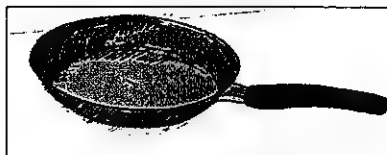
In the USA, all **medical services** are **private**. You pay for everything. Most people have **private medical insurance**. Employers normally pay for this.

Compare this with your country.

1 41.1 Listen and repeat.



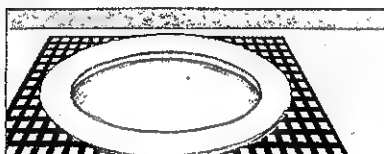
1 ■ saucepan



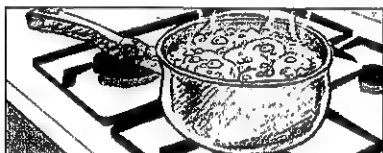
2 a frying pan



3 a bowl



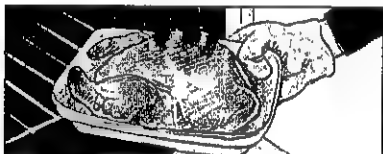
4 a plate



5 boil



6 fry



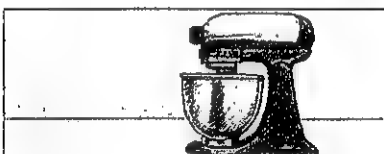
7 roast



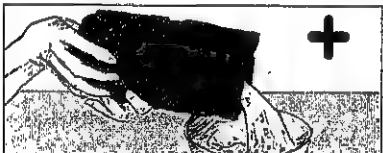
8 bake



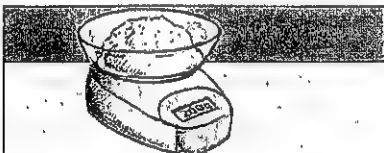
9 grill



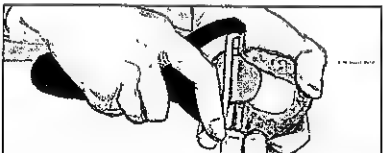
10 mix



11 add



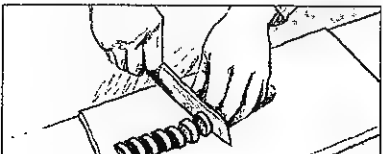
12 weigh



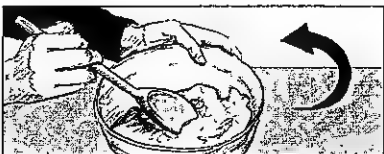
13 peel



14 pour



15 slice



16 stir

2 41.2 Drill. Listen. Say what you've done.

- 1 Put some water in a saucepan.
OK, I've put some water in a saucepan.

Verbs and adjectives

We can use the past participle of the verb as an adjective:

verb	fry	grill
adjective	a fried egg	grilled fish

3a 41.3 Listen. What does the man order?

TODAY'S SPECIALS

grilled salmon	a baked potato
fried chicken	boiled potatoes
omelette	chips
a mixed salad	
roasted vegetables	
boiled vegetables	

b Complete the conversation.

- A Are you ready to order?
B Yes. Can I have the ¹_____, please?
A What kind of potatoes would you like – baked, boiled, or chips?
B Oh, ²_____, please.
A And what would you like with that?
B Oh, can I have ³_____, please?
A OK, so that's ⁴_____ with ⁵_____ and ⁶_____.
B Thank you.

4 Speaking Work with a partner. Make new conversations. Use the menu.

English in the world

Eating

In Britain, it's polite to eat everything on your plate. It shows that you have enjoyed the meal.

In China, however, it's polite to leave some food. It shows that your hosts have given you enough food.

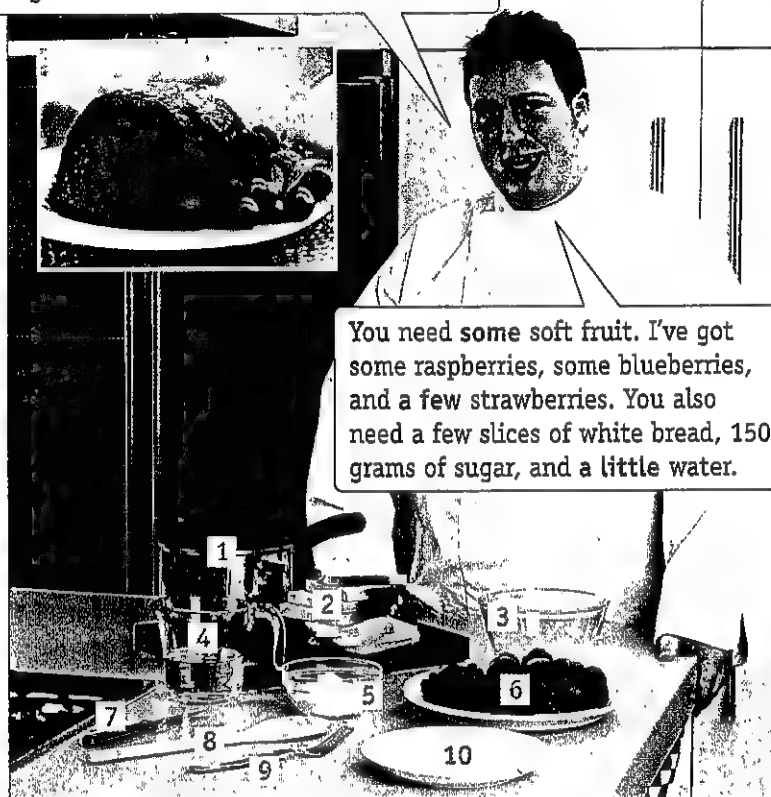
Compare this with your country.

42 GRAMMAR

1a Label the things in the picture.

bread fruit sugar water a knife a plate
a spoon a bowl a saucepan a fork

Today I'm going to make Summer Pudding. It's an easy recipe. You don't need many things for it and it doesn't take much time.



b 42.1 Read and listen.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 110.

Expressing quantity

Countable nouns

You need a saucepan.

NOT You need saucepan.

I've got some raspberries.

I haven't got any apples.

You need a few things.

You don't need many things.

How many things do we need?

Uncountable nouns

You need some fruit.

You don't need any milk.

You need a little water.

You don't need much water.

How much water do we need?

3 42.2 Drill. Listen. Say the sentence. Use *much* / *many*.

1 eggs

You don't need many eggs.

2 salt

You don't need much salt.

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

Use the cues.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| - strawberries | - bottles of water |
| - sugar | - pieces of paper |
| - milk | - beef |
| - slices of toast | - eggs |
| - wine | - butter |

A How many strawberries do you want?

B Oh, just a few.

A How much sugar do you want?

B Oh, just a little.

Language note Quantity expressions

To talk about 'how much' of an uncountable thing, we use a quantity expression:

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| a slice of bread | a kilo of fruit |
| two slices of bread | two kilos of fruit |

5a Read the recipe. Choose the correct word.

So, we're going to make Summer Pudding. We've got ¹a / some nice soft fruit. First, wash the fruit and put it in ²a / some saucepan with ³a / some sugar. Add ⁴a little / a few water. Then cook the fruit for ⁵a little / a few minutes. Try the fruit and add ⁶a little / a few more sugar, if you need it. Now take ⁷a little / a few slices of white bread. Put the bread in ⁸a / some bowl. Pour the fruit into the bowl. Put ⁹a little / a few more bread on top of the fruit. Put ¹⁰a / some plate on top and put the bowl in the fridge for ¹¹a little / a few hours. Serve the Summer Pudding with ¹²a little / a few cream or ¹³a / some milk.

b 42.3 Listen and check.

6a Writing Tell a partner how to make a simple dish or drink, for example:

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| - a boiled egg | - grilled fish |
| - a fruit salad | - a cup of tea or coffee |

b Write down the recipe. Follow the pattern.

This is a recipe for ...

You need ...

First you ...

Then you ...

Serve the ... with ...

Now I can ...
describe a recipe.

1 43.1 Read and listen to the text. Choose the correct answers.

- 1 What is the basic rule of the diet?
 - a You eat a little but often.
 - b You don't eat anything on one day a week.
 - c You only eat one meal a day.
- 2 When does he eat?
 - a in the evening
 - b every four hours
 - c in the morning

Eat as much as you like

Can you eat a lot and lose weight? Callum Briggs, 43, thinks you can.

'I've always liked food. I was slim when I was young. However, when I was 40, I was very overweight and I didn't have much energy. My doctor gave me lots of information about diets and exercise, but it was very complicated. Then I read about this new diet in the newspaper. It's very simple. You eat only one meal a day – in the evening, so I don't eat breakfast or lunch. However, for dinner in the evening you can eat as much as you like.

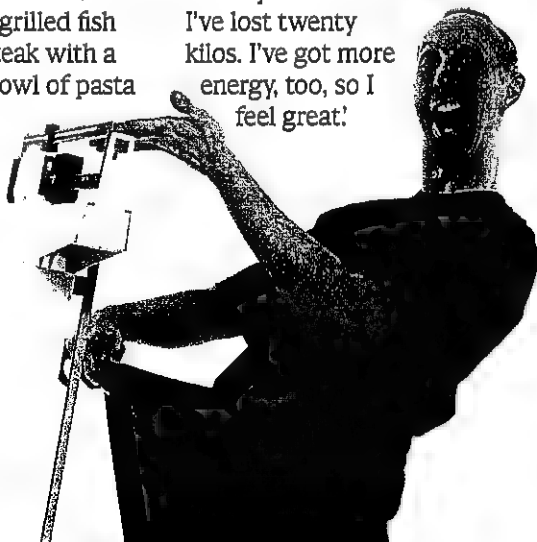
So, a normal dinner for me is a big piece of grilled fish or a really big steak with a medium-sized bowl of pasta or a couple of baked potatoes, and a lot of vegetables or salad. I often have one or two fried eggs with that. Then I have dessert – some fruit or a big slice of apple pie

with cream. After that I have some cheese with several biscuits and a couple of glasses of wine, too.

I have dinner at nine o'clock, so when I go to bed I feel very full. However, I always sleep well.

I started the diet a few months ago. It was very hard at first. I felt very hungry by midday and I wanted a biscuit or a sandwich, but it's OK now. I don't have any snacks and I just drink lots of water during the day. And it works.

I've lost twenty kilos. I've got more energy, too, so I feel great!



2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why did Callum start the diet?
- 2 How did he learn about it?
- 3 What meals doesn't he eat?
- 4 What time does he eat dinner?
- 5 Does he sleep well?
- 6 When did he start the diet?
- 7 Has he lost any weight?
- 8 How does he feel now?

Language note *but* and *however*

I feel full, *but* I always sleep well.

I feel full. *However*, I always sleep well.

3 Join the sentences with *but* and then with *however*.

- 1 I got lots of information. It was complicated.
- 2 I don't eat lunch. I eat a big dinner.
- 3 I eat a lot. I've lost a lot of weight.
- 4 I tried a lot of diets. They didn't work.
- 5 The diet was hard at first. It's OK now.
- 6 I only eat one meal a day. I eat as much as I like.

4 What kinds of food and drink does Callum mention? What quantities does he eat?

a big piece of grilled fish
lots of water

5 Your life Discuss these questions.

- 1 What do you think of the diet?
- 2 Why do you think it works?
- 3 Do you know any other kinds of diet?
- 4 Do you think diets are a good idea?
- 5 What do you think is a healthy diet?

Pronunciation

The letter *i*

1 43.2 Listen and repeat.

/i/	/aɪ/	/ɜ:/
mix	slice	first

2a Put the words in the correct column above.

rice	chicken	fish	white	bird	grill
third	drink	shirt	diet	wine	girl

b 43.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

- 1 Look back at Episodes 4 and 5. What happened?
- 2 **44.1** Read and listen to the story. Why does Russell phone Cindy?
- 3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?
 - 1 Russell has never borrowed the car before.
 - 2 He's gone out with Anna.
 - 3 Russell never puts petrol in the car.
 - 4 He hasn't found a job.
 - 5 Ryan gave Russell his mobile.
 - 6 Ryan has been to see the bank manager.
 - 7 He travelled on the bus.
 - 8 There are two parking tickets on the car.
 - 9 Ryan takes the car.
 - 10 The police think that Ryan has stolen the car.

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions
Expressing annoyance

Oh, no, _____ again!
Oh, _____ goodness' sake!
You _____ joking!
You can't _____ serious!
Oh, I don't believe _____!

b Work with a partner. Respond to these events.

A *The computer isn't working.*
B *Oh no, not again.*

- 1 The computer isn't working.
- 2 The car's gone.
- 3 Someone's stolen the camera.
- 4 Those children have broken the window.
- 5 There's a parking ticket on the car.
- 6 Someone's taken my keys.
- 7 I'm sorry. I've lost your mobile.
- 8 The shop's closed today.

5 Language check. Underline examples of quantity expressions in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.

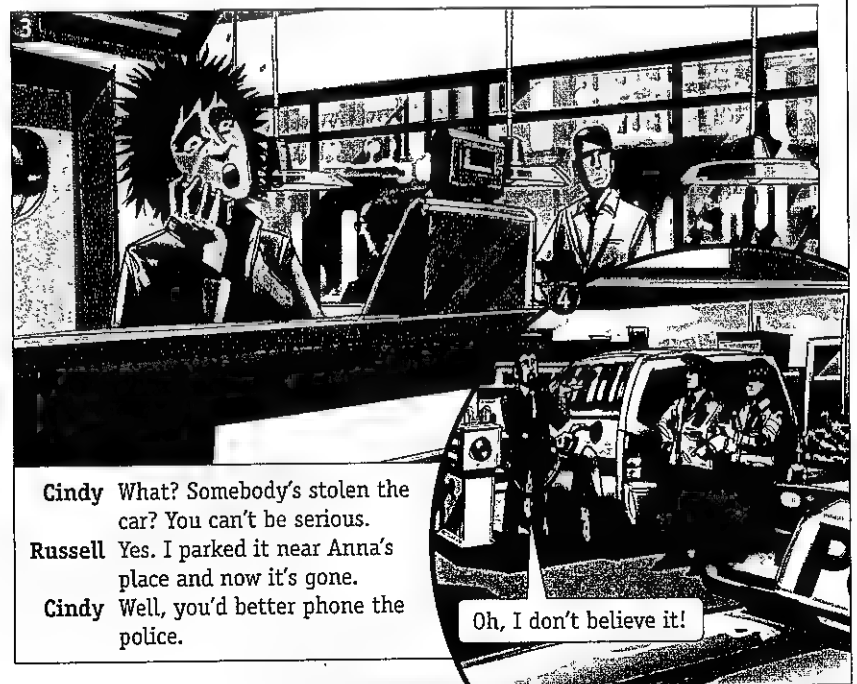
1 At The Coffee Shop...



Ryan Oh, no, not again! Has Russell taken the car?
Cindy Yes, he has. He's gone out with Anna.
Ryan Again? And he never puts any petrol in the car.
Cindy Well, he hasn't got much money.
Ryan That's because he hasn't looked for a job.
Cindy He's borrowed your mobile, too.
Ryan Oh, for goodness' sake!



Lucy Hello, Ryan. What are you doing in this part of town?
Ryan Hi, Lucy. I've been to see our accountant - we're having a few problems with The Coffee Shop. Oh! This is our car!
Lucy Yes, didn't you park it here?
Ryan No, I didn't. Russell borrowed it. I came on the underground.
Lucy You've got a couple of parking tickets, Ryan.
Ryan You're joking! Well, I've got my car key, so Russell can walk home.



Cindy What? Somebody's stolen the car? You can't be serious.
Russell Yes. I parked it near Anna's place and now it's gone.
Cindy Well, you'd better phone the police.

Oh, I don't believe it!

1 45.1 Listen and repeat.



1 a baker's



2 a butcher's



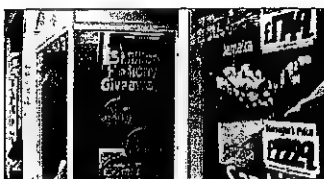
3 a greengrocer's



4 a chemist's



5 a department store



6 a travel agent's



7 a newsagent's



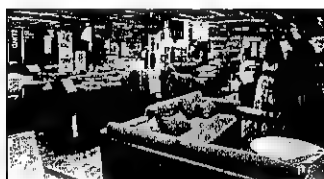
8 an estate agent's



9 a music shop



10 a sports shop



11 a furniture shop



12 a hairdresser's



13 a jewellery shop



14 a flower shop



15 a stationery shop



16 a hardware shop

2 What other kinds of shop do you know?

Word building 3

This shop sells shoes. (Countable noun)

It's a shoe shop.

This shop sells furniture. (Uncountable noun)

It's a furniture shop.

BUT

a clothes shop a sports shop a bookshop

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

A What do you buy at a greengrocer's?

B You buy fruit and vegetables.

OR

A Where do you go to buy a ring or a watch?

B You go to a jewellery shop.

4 45.2 Listen. Where are the people?

1 They're at a shoe shop.

5a Your life Think about the main shopping street in your town. Write about five places that you go to.

1 There's a big department store. It's called Bedfords. I often go there on Saturdays.

2 There are two music shops. Mercury Music is next to the General Union bank and ...

b Compare your sentences with a partner.

Pronunciation

Silent letters

1 Which letters are not pronounced? Circle them.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1 cam@ra | 5 strawberry |
| 2 different | 6 jewellery |
| 3 interesting | 7 stationery |
| 4 restaurant | 8 everything |

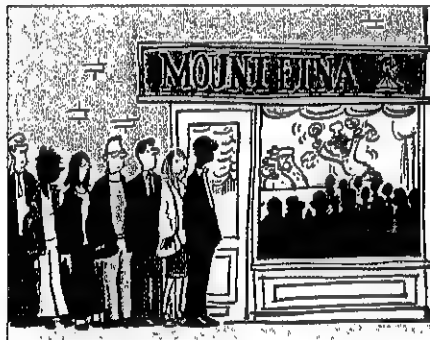
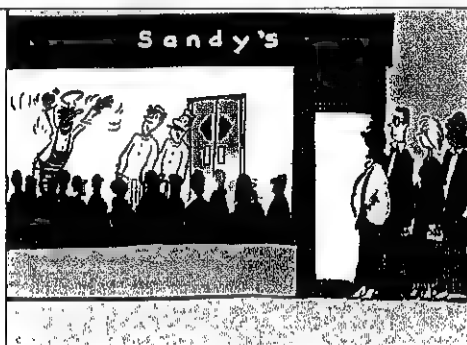
2 45.3 Listen, check, and repeat.

1 46.1 Read and listen.



The Red Dragon is a small restaurant. It's very popular, so it's usually busy. The food is good, but the chef has got a bad temper.

Sandy's restaurant is smaller than The Red Dragon, but it's more popular, so it's usually busier. The food is better, but the chef has got a worse temper.



Mount Etna is the smallest restaurant in the town, but it's the most popular so it's always the busiest. It's got the best food. Unfortunately, the chef has got the worst temper.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 110.

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
1 one syllable	small	smaller	the smallest
2 -e	large	larger	the largest
3 -y	easy	easier	the easiest
4 short vowel + consonant	big	bigger	the biggest
5 two or more syllables	popular	more popular	the most popular
	good	better	the best
6 irregular	bad	worse	the worst
	far	further	the furthest

Sandy's restaurant is smaller than The Red Dragon.

Mount Etna is the smallest restaurant in the town.

3 46.2 Drill. Listen. Make the comparatives.

- It's a noisy restaurant.
This one's noisier.
- It's an interesting restaurant.
This one's more interesting.

4 Give your opinions. Compare these things. Use the adjectives in brackets.

I think cats are friendlier than dogs.

OR

I think dogs are friendlier than cats.

- cats and dogs (friendly)
- tea and coffee (good)
- letters and emails (nice)
- TV and the radio (interesting)
- English and your language (easy)
- men and women (tidy)
- trains and planes (safe)
- a headache and toothache (bad)
- football and athletics (popular)
- the USA and Australia (big)

5 46.3 Drill. Listen. Give the response.

- This is a big restaurant.
Yes. It's the biggest restaurant in the town.
- This is an expensive shop.
Yes. It's the most expensive shop in the town.

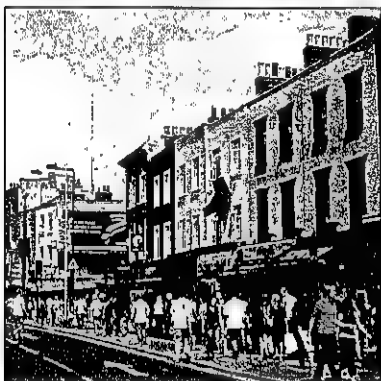
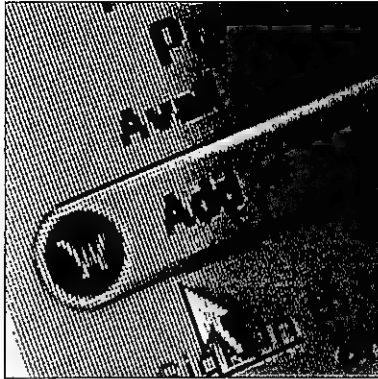
6a Your life What (or Who) is ... ?

- the largest room in your house
- the most popular sport in your country
- the nicest meal that you've ever had
- the most difficult thing in English
- the most famous person in your country
- the worst school subject
- the best car in the world
- the most expensive thing that you've ever bought
- the best thing that you've ever done
- the worst thing that you've ever done

b Compare your answers with a partner.

1 Where do you normally shop? Why?

- at the supermarket
- at local shops
- on the Internet
- at the market



2a 47.1 Listen. Where do the people normally shop? Complete the first column of the table.

	shops	reasons
1 Peter		
2 Susan		
3 Anjit		
4 Birgit		
5 Troy		

b Listen again. What reasons do the people give? Write the correct letters in the table above. There may be more than one reason.

- a It's cheaper.
- b The food is fresher.
- c I can shop 24/7.
- d You can buy everything in one shop.
- e It's friendlier and more personal.
- f Parking is easier.
- g It's more convenient.
- h All the small shops have gone.

c Write about each person.

Peter shops ... because ...

Language note: not as ... as

We use **not as ... as** for comparatives.

- 1 The supermarket is cheaper than the local shops.
The local shops aren't as cheap as the supermarket.
- 2 The local shops are friendlier than the supermarket.
The supermarket isn't as friendly as the local shops.

3a What do the people say about these things?

- 1 Peter - wine
- 2 Susan - when she was a child
- 3 Anjit - opening hours
- 4 Birgit - South Africa
- 5 Troy - home delivery

b Listen again and check your answers.

4a Your life Answer these questions.

- 1 How often do you shop ... ?
- at a supermarket
- at local shops
- at a street market
- at a shopping centre
- on the Internet
- 2 Which do you prefer?
- 3 Where do you normally buy food?
- 4 Which of the opinions from exercise 2b do you agree with?

b Discuss your answers with a partner.

5a Writing Read the text about shopping.

I usually go to the local shops and the market, because I think the food is fresher. **However**, I go to the supermarket for heavy things like sugar and drinks. You can park there easily, **but** it isn't as friendly or personal as the local shops. **On the other hand**, the local shops are often more expensive.

b Write a paragraph about your own shopping habits. Compare the different ways of shopping. Give your reasons.

1a **48.1** Read and listen. What size shirt does the man buy?

S SMALL	M MEDIUM	L LARGE	XL EXTRA LARGE
------------	-------------	------------	-------------------



Customer Excuse me. Can I try this shirt on, please?

Assistant Yes. The changing rooms are over there.

Customer Thank you.

Later...

Assistant How is it?

Customer It's too tight.

Assistant What size is that?

Customer Large. But it isn't big enough. Have you got it in a larger size?

Assistant Yes. Here you are. This is an extra large.

Customer Thanks.

Later...

Assistant Is that any good?

Customer Yes. This one's fine, thanks. I'll take it.

Assistant Anything else?

Customer No, thank you.

Assistant That's £45 then, please.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions: Buying clothes

Can I t_____ this shirt on, please?

The changing r_____ are over there.

H_____ is it?

W_____ size is that?

Have you got it in a larger s_____?

Is that a_____ good?

b Check your answers with the conversation in exercise 1.

too/enough



It's too tight.



They're too loose.



It's too small. It isn't big enough.

3 Change the conversation in exercise 1. Start like this.

Customer: Excuse me. Can I try these shorts on, please?

4a **48.2** Listen to three conversations. Answer the questions each time.

- 1 What does the person try on?
- 2 What's wrong with it/them?
- 3 What does he/she ask for?
- 4 Does he/she get it/them?

b Work with a partner. Choose one of the conversations.

5 Speaking Work with a partner. Make new conversations in the clothes shop.

English in the world
Bargains

What are these signs in your language?

1 **Sale**
50% off

2 **BUY 1 GET 1 FREE**

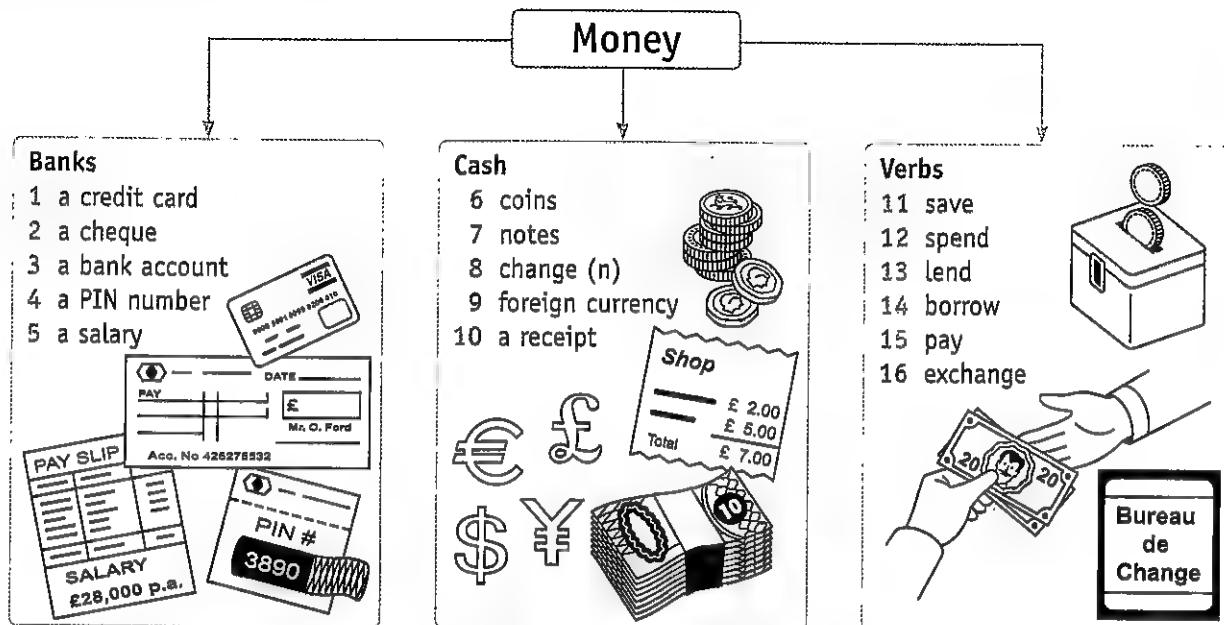
3 **Two for the price of one**

4 **SPECIAL OFFER**

5 **Buy now Pay later**

6 **Closing Down Sale Everything Must Go!**

1 49.1 Listen and repeat.

**Language note** *pay (for/by); lend/borrow*

- 1 The verb **pay** is used in different ways:
 pay a/the bill
 pay for a meal/some shoes/a ticket
 pay by credit card/cheque
- 2 **lend (to)** = give money and take back
borrow (from) = take money and give back
 He **lent** me some money.
 I **borrowed** some money from him.
 Can you **lend** me £5?
 Can I **borrow** £40?

2 Ask and answer with a partner. Use the cues.

- 1 A Can I pay by credit card, please?
 B Yes, of course./No, (I'm) sorry.

- 1 pay by credit card
- 2 borrow some money
- 3 have the bill
- 4 exchange some foreign currency
- 5 have a receipt
- 6 pay by cheque
- 7 have some coins for the machine
- 8 open a bank account
- 9 pay for these books
- 10 have my change

3 49.2 Listen to eight conversations. What's the problem?

- 1 He hasn't got enough money.

4 **Your life** How do people normally do these things in your country? Choose from the different ways in the box.

in cash by cheque by credit card
 on the Internet electronically

- 1 receive their salary
- 2 pay bills
- 3 pay for meals in a restaurant
- 4 take money abroad
- 5 send money abroad

English in the world

Cash machines

1 Number the instructions in the correct order.

Please take
your cash.

Please enter
your PIN.

Please insert
your card.

Please remove
your card and wait
for your cash.

2 What are these instructions in your language?

50 GRAMMAR

1 50.1 Read and listen.



Sarah Oh, here's a text from Lucy. She's going to the bank, so she'll be late.

Cindy That's £4.50, please, Peter.

Peter You know, it says in the newspaper that we won't have money in the future.

Cindy Will we pay for everything with credit cards?

Peter No, we won't. People will pay for things electronically.

Sarah How will they do that?

Peter You'll have a computer chip in your hand. When you want something, you'll just hold out your hand.

Cindy Huh, that won't be new. Our kids do that now!



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 111.

Future with will

We use **will** for predictions:

In the future, you'll have a computer chip in your hand.
She'll be late.

People will pay electronically. They won't use cash.
I'll be late. I won't arrive before 7.30.

Will we use credit cards? Yes, we will.
No, we won't.

How will we pay for things? When will she arrive?

3a Make sentences about the future. Use the cues.

- 1 We won't use money.
- 2 We'll pay for things electronically.
- 1 use money X
- 2 pay for things electronically ✓
- 3 buy everything on the Internet ✓
- 4 go shopping X
- 5 write letters X
- 6 send emails ✓
- 7 travel to work X
- 8 work from home ✓

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

- 1 A Will we use money?
B No, we won't.

4a 50.2 Listen to the messages in Kay's voice mail. Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with will or won't.

email	be	need	have
arrive	miss	phone	fix

- 1 The visitors won't arrive before three o'clock.
- 2 Farida _____ the photographs.
- 3 Her husband _____ time to get the theatre tickets.
- 4 John _____ the meeting.
- 5 Her mother _____ later.
- 6 The engineer _____ the computer tomorrow morning.
- 7 Her son _____ a meal.
- 8 Margaret _____ here next week.

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer about the messages.

- 1 A Will the visitors arrive before three o'clock?
B No, they won't.

5 Writing Make some predictions about your life in ten years' time. Write six sentences.

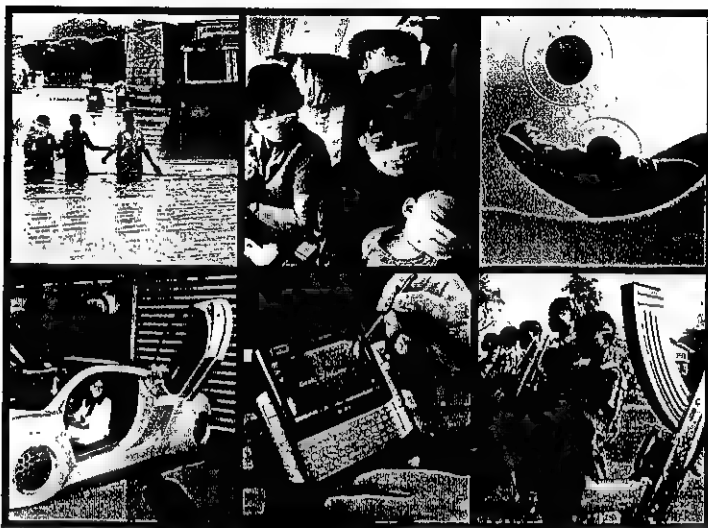
- 1 I'll be a famous writer.
- 2 I'll live in a different country ...
- 3 I'll be married/single/divorced ...

51 SKILLS

1a **51.1** Read and listen. Tick ✓ the topics the people write about.

- global warming
- travel in space
- computers
- diseases
- cars
- wars

What will the future be like?



1 In the future, I don't think people will have a computer, a mobile phone, a camera and things like that. They'll just have one small computer. It will be as small as a mobile phone and it will be a lot more powerful than today's computers. In fact, it will do everything, like book holidays or order food from the supermarket. You won't need a keyboard. You'll just talk to it. You'll say: 'I want to fly to Moscow on Friday.' Then the computer will buy the tickets. So life will be a lot easier – as long as you don't lose your little computer. *Tadashi, Japan*

2 Will we have cars in the future? Yes, I think we will, but they'll be very different from today's cars. First, they won't use petrol or diesel, because we won't have enough oil in fifty years' time. Cars will probably use electricity or hydrogen. So they'll be quieter and cleaner. And I think the roads will be safer, too, because you won't actually drive your car. You'll just sit in it and the car's computer will drive it. So there won't be any accidents. *Flavia, Brazil*

3 I don't think the world will be a safer place in the future. I think it will be more dangerous – because of diseases. People travel a lot now, so diseases move very quickly from place to place. In the future, travel will be faster and cheaper, because planes will be better. Sooner or later a new and very dangerous disease will appear. It will move quickly from one continent to another and millions of people will die. *Miklos, Hungary*

2 What do the writers think will be ... ?

- quieter and cleaner
- smaller and more powerful
- more dangerous
- easier
- safer
- faster and cheaper

3 What else do the writers say about these things?

- mobile phones
- computers
- transport
- the world's population

Language note Expressing opinions 2

I think the world will be safer.

I don't think the world will be safer.

NOT I think the world won't be safer.

4 Give your opinions. Use the cues.

1 I think we will drive cars.

OR I don't think we will drive cars.

- 1 we / drive / cars
- 2 the world / be / more dangerous
- 3 computers / do / everything for us
- 4 millions of people / die / from diseases
- 5 cars / use / electricity
- 6 global warming / destroy / the earth
- 7 we / have / wars
- 8 people / take / holidays in space

5 Speaking Write six questions about the future. Interview a partner. Find reasons for his/her opinions.

A Will the world be safer in the future?

B No, I think it will be more dangerous.

A Why?

Pronunciation

Sentence stress

1 **51.2** Listen.

I'll be late I'll be late for the meeting.

2 **51.3** Listen and repeat.

I'll see you I'll see you this evening.
We'll be there We'll be there at ten.

b Do the writers think life in the future will be better or worse?

- 1 Look back at Episodes 5 and 6. What happened?
- 2 **52.1** Read and listen to the story. What do Ryan and Cindy decide to do? Why?
- 3 Complete the sentences.
 - 1 Melanie wants to stay at university.
 - 2 _____ are still empty.
 - 3 _____ wants to open a new café.
 - 4 _____ is losing money.
 - 5 _____ is still looking for a shop.
 - 6 _____ won't give Ryan and Cindy a loan.
 - 7 _____ thinks Anna's offer is OK.
 - 8 _____ wants to live in Spain.
 - 9 _____ doesn't want to leave her friends.
 - 10 _____ don't have any money.

4a Complete the expressions.

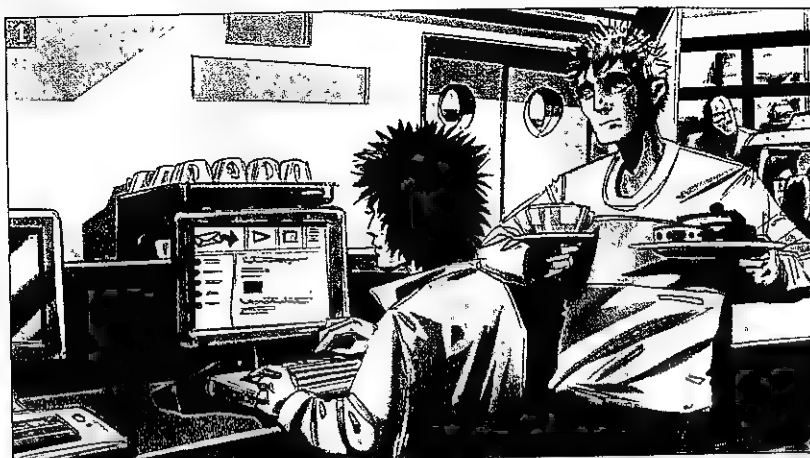
Everyday expressions

Talking about money problems

How much w_____ that cost?
 We c_____ afford it.
 Business isn't v_____ good.
 It's losing m_____.
 It isn't a b_____ price.
 We're b_____.

b Use the expressions. Complete these conversations.

- 1 A We need a new car.
 B How _____?
 A About £15,000.
 B _____.
 A Why not?
 B We're _____.
 - 2 A They've had an offer for the café.
 B Yes, and it _____.
 A But why do they want to sell it?
 B _____.
 A Really? Why is it losing money?
 B _____.
- 5 Language check. Underline the examples of the future with *will* in the story.
- 6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Cindy There's an email here from Melanie. She wants to do another year at university.

Russell How much will that cost?

Cindy A lot. And we can't afford it. Business isn't very good.

Russell Why's that?

Cindy The factory has closed and Peter's old offices are still empty, so we've lost a lot of customers.

Russell A big company wants to open an Internet café in those offices.

Cindy I know, and that will be the end for us.

Russell What does Dad think?

Cindy He wants to sell The Coffee Shop, but who'll buy it when it's losing money?

Russell Anna's looking for a place for her shop. Maybe she'll buy it.



Cindy Will the bank give us a loan?

Ryan No, they won't, but we've had an offer from Anna Harlow. Look.

Cindy Well, it isn't a bad price, but where will we live, Ryan? The café's our home, too.

Ryan We'll open a bar on the Costa del Sol in Spain! I've always wanted to do that.

Cindy But all our friends are here, Ryan.

Ryan What else can we do? We're broke!

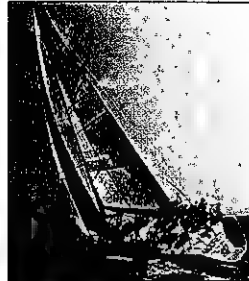
3 OK. We'll sell The Coffee Shop to Anna.

1 **53.1** Listen and repeat.

1 clubbing



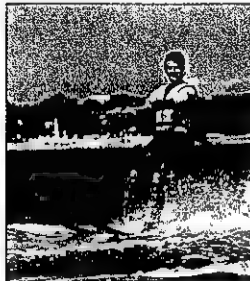
2 mountain-climbing



3 sailing



4 scuba-diving



5 water-skiing



6 canoeing



7 going to the gym



8 sunbathing



9 going out with friends



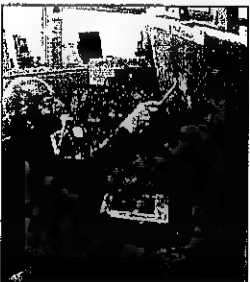
10 relaxing



11 collecting things



12 doing DIY



13 painting



14 sightseeing



15 surfing the Internet

-ing

When we talk about activities,
we use the **-ing** form with no article.

I've never tried water-skiing.

NOT I've never tried water-ski.

Scuba-diving is great.

NOT The scuba-diving is great.

2 **53.2** Drill. Listen. Ask the question.

1 sunbathe

Do you like sunbathing?

3 Ask and answer with a partner about the activities. Follow the pattern.

A Do you like ...-ing?

B Yes, I do. I love it. / I think it's great.

I've never tried it, but it looks
exciting / interesting / dangerous.

I don't know, but I'd like to try it.

I don't mind it.

No, I don't. I can't stand it. / I think
it's boring.

4 What other leisure activities do you know? Put them in a table like this.

playing	doing	(other verbs + -ing)
tennis	karate	gardening

5 **53.3** Listen. What do the people like? Complete the table.

	Arnold	Beth
likes		
doesn't mind		
doesn't like		
hasn't tried		

6 **Your life** Complete the sentences about your own life.

1 I love _____.

2 I don't like _____.

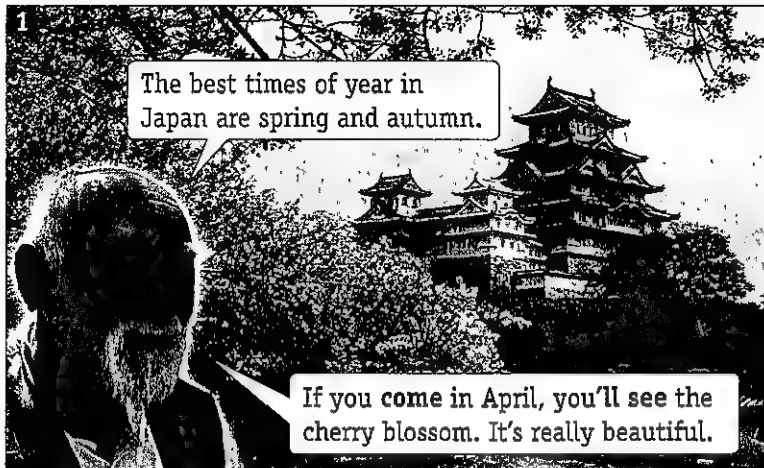
3 I don't mind _____.

4 I've never tried _____.

5 I'd like to try _____.

54 GRAMMAR

1 54.1 Read and listen.



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

First conditional

We use a **first conditional** to talk about real conditions in the future.

an if clause **a main clause**

If you come in April, you'll see the cherry blossom.

a main clause **an if clause**

You'll see the cherry blossom if you come in April.

NOT You'll see the cherry blossom if you will come in April.

3 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

- If we book on the Internet, it will be cheaper. (book/be)
- You a cheaper holiday if you it now. (get/book)
- If we on Wednesday, the airport busy. (travel/not be)
- You the best weather if you in June. (have/come)
- You a visa if you an EU passport. (not need/have)
- If you by train, it longer. (travel/take)
- If you in winter, it too hot. (go/not be)
- You vaccinations if you to go to Africa. (need/want)

Language note *when*

I'll phone you if the plane is late.
(future possibility)

I'll phone you **when** I get there.
(future certainty)

4a 54.2 Listen. Match the cues.

- collect the tickets c
- phone you
- look for a hotel
- send you a postcard
- book the holiday
- take a taxi

- arrive
- go to the airport
- have my lunch break
- leave the office
- go on holiday
- go into town

b Write the sentences.

- I'll collect the tickets **when** I have my lunch break.

5a Speaking Complete these sentences with your own ideas.

- If I'm ill tomorrow, I won't go to work.
- If the weather is nice on Sunday, .
- If I stay in this evening, .
- When I get home tonight, .
- When I leave work tomorrow, .
- If it rains on Saturday, .
- When I go on holiday this year, .
- If I haven't got enough money at the end of the week, .

b Compare your answers with a partner. Are any of your answers the same?

Pronunciation

won't and want

1 54.3 Listen and repeat.

- We **won't** be there.
We **want** to be there.
- We **won't** go by train.
We **want** to go by train.

2 54.4 Listen. Do you hear *want* or *won't* each time?

1 **55.1** Read and listen. Match the texts with the correct pictures.



If you want to try a different holiday this year, you'll find some great ideas in our holiday guide.

DREAM HOLIDAYS

1 With its blue sea and beautiful islands, Croatia is the place for a sailing holiday. On a one-week course you'll learn how to sail a yacht while you travel along the coast from island to island. You'll live on the yacht with your teacher and the other students, and you'll sail about thirty kilometres a day. You'll stop at a different town for dinner and some sightseeing each night.

2 Do you want to change your life? Then a holiday at the Chiva-Som resort in Thailand will help. You'll stay at the famous Chiva-Som Hotel by the sea. Here you can relax and forget all your problems. You can try yoga and tai chi or have a massage. The food is delicious and very healthy. You can also do a course in Thai cooking.

3 If you like dancing, then you'll love a trip to Cuba with Club Dance Holidays. In the mornings you'll learn how to dance the tango and other dances. At night you'll go dancing at Havana's famous clubs. You'll stay at the five-star Hotel Nacional. If you stay for an extra week, you'll have the chance to explore Cuba's wonderful rainforests and beaches.

4 Scuba-diving will take you to a new world. You'll stay at the Rosetta Hotel in Sharm el-Sheikh, Egypt. Before you go into the sea, you'll learn how to scuba-dive in the hotel's swimming pool. Then you'll move into the warm water of the Red Sea with its beautiful coral reefs and tropical fish. When you aren't in the water, there will be flights to some of Egypt's ancient monuments.

2 Find this information about each holiday.

- 1 Where is the holiday?
- 2 Where do you stay?
- 3 What is the main activity?
- 4 What other things can you do?

Language note Time clauses

We can use the first conditional structure with time clauses that start with *when, before, after, while*:

- 1 I'll phone you *when* I get to the airport.
- 2 *Before* we go to the travel agent's, we'll check the Internet.
- 3 I'm sure these postcards will arrive *after* we get home.
- 4 I'll look after the bags *while* you go swimming.

3 What do these adjectives describe in the texts?

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1 blue | 5 wonderful |
| 2 beautiful | 6 warm |
| 3 famous | 7 tropical |
| 4 delicious | 8 ancient |

4a Your life Answer the questions.

- 1 Where do you normally go on holiday?
- 2 When do you go?
- 3 How long do you stay for?
- 4 Who do you go with?
- 5 Where do you stay?
- 6 What things do you do?

b Use the questions. Ask and answer with a partner.

1a 56.1 Read and listen.



Receptionist Good morning, The Dorset Hotel.

Caller Hello. I'd like to make a reservation, please.

Receptionist Certainly. When for?

Caller For 18 July.

Receptionist How many nights?

Caller Three nights.

Receptionist Just one moment. Yes, that's fine. How many guests will there be?

Caller Two – me and my husband.

Receptionist And would you like a double or a twin room?

Caller A double, please. And we'd like a room with a sea view, please.

Receptionist Yes, that will be fine. The price will be £85 per night.

Caller Does that include breakfast?

Receptionist Yes, it does. So what name is it, please?

Caller It's Mr and Mrs Taylor. Will you confirm the reservation by email?

Receptionist Yes, of course.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

2a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions Booking a hotel room

I'd like to _____ a reservation, please.

When _____?

How _____ nights?

_____ many guests will there be?

We'd _____ a room with a sea view.

Does that _____ breakfast?

What _____ is it, please?

b Who says each thing – the caller or the receptionist?

3a 56.2 Listen to two more conversations.
Complete the table.

	The Angel	Hotel Jumbo
Name		
Arrival		
No. of nights		
No. of guests		
Type of room		
Price per night		
Breakfast included		

b Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use the information in the table.

4a Writing Read the email.

To: taylor425@world.com

Subject: Confirmation of reservation

Dear Mrs Taylor

This is to confirm your reservation at our hotel for 18 July for three nights. The reservation is for two people in a double room with a sea view.

The price will be £85 per night including breakfast.

We look forward to welcoming you to our hotel.

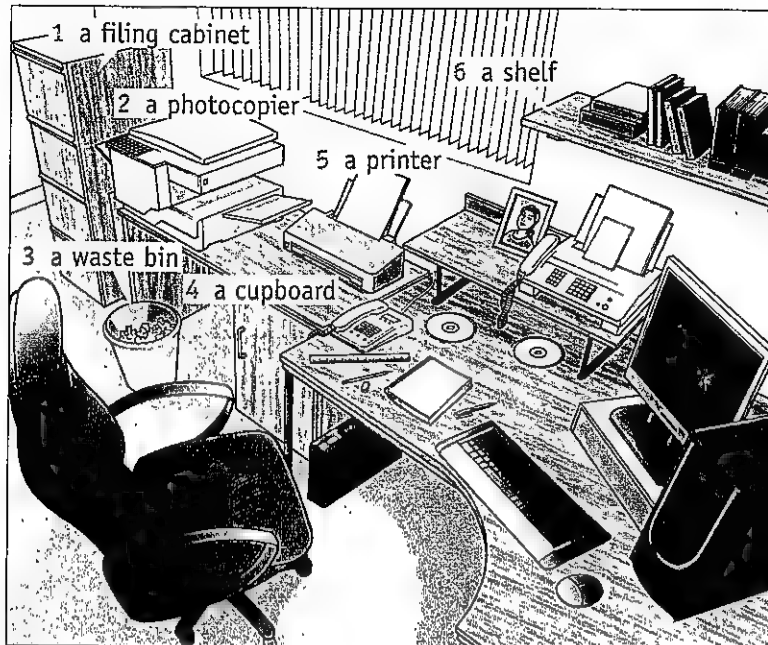
Yours sincerely,
M Barker
Manager

b Write an email to confirm one of the reservations in exercise 3.

English in the world
Hotel signs

What are these signs in your language?



1a **57.1** Listen and repeat.

b What other things in the picture can you name?

2 Complete the expressions with the correct verbs.

do send use go have make

Office activities

1	_____	→ an email		
2	_____	→ a letter	To: ben@cup.com	
3	_____	→ an appointment		
4	_____	→ a phone call		
5	_____	→ some filing		
6	_____	→ some photocopying		
7	_____	→ to a meeting		
8	_____	→ on the Internet		
9	_____	→ a break		
10	_____	→ a day off		
11	_____	→ the computer		
12	_____	→ the fax machine		

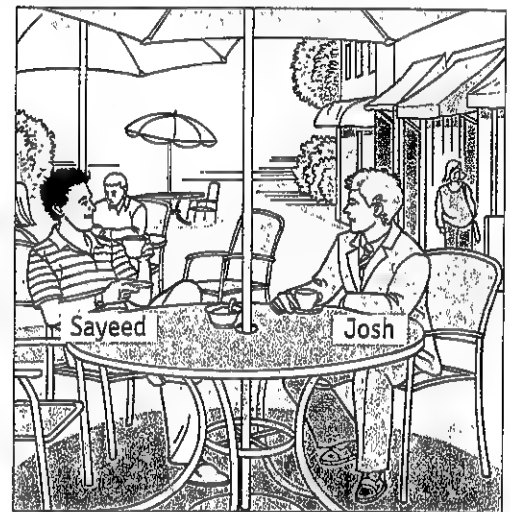
3a Write the past simple of the verbs in exercise 2.

send – sent

b **57.2** Drill. Listen. Say what you did.

1 an appointment

I made an appointment.

4a **57.3** Listen. Why isn't Sayeed wearing a suit?

b Listen again. Number the things that Josh did in the correct order.

- _____ went to a meeting
- _____ sent some emails
- _____ made a couple of appointments
- _____ had a break
- _____ went on the Internet
- 1 made a few phone calls
- _____ did some filing

5a **Your life** Did you do any of the things in exercise 2 yesterday? What other things did you do?

b Speaking Work with a partner. Talk about your day yesterday. Try to get more information.

A How was your day yesterday?

B It was great / OK / fine / terrible / not very good.

A What did you do?

B ...

A Really? / Oh, right. / Why did you do that? / Was it good?

58 GRAMMAR

1 58.1 Read and listen.



- Daniel** Well, I must go. I have to make some phone calls.
Lucy Me, too. I have to photocopy this report.
Daniel Oh, there's something wrong with the photocopier. We mustn't use it.
Lucy But Olive has to have the report for a meeting today.
Daniel Well, take it to The Photo Shop.
Lucy Good idea, but I must hurry. The meeting's at 12 and I mustn't be late.



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

have to/must/mustn't

- I have to send an email. = Do it. It's necessary.
 I must hurry.
 You mustn't use the phone. = Don't use it. It isn't allowed.

3 Say what you must or mustn't do.

- 1 You mustn't use the lift. You must take the stairs.
- 1 Don't use the lift. Take the stairs.
- 2 Park between the white lines. Don't park on the yellow lines.
- 3 Stop when the light is red. Don't stop on the crossing.
- 4 Put all paper in the bin. Don't put bottles or food in the bin.
- 5 Don't use the office phone for personal calls. Use your mobile.

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

mustn't/don't have to

- You mustn't go.
 = Don't go. It isn't allowed.
 You don't have to go.
 = It isn't necessary. You can go if you want to.

5 Complete the sentences with *mustn't* or *don't have to*.



- 1 You mustn't turn left here.
- 2 You _____ turn right here.
- 3 You _____ pay by credit card.
- 4 You _____ smoke here.
- 5 You _____ pay.
- 6 You _____ drink the water.

6a Writing Write six sentences about your life with *have to*/*don't have to*.

- 1 I have to/don't have to get up early on Saturdays.

b Write six rules for your home.

- 1 You mustn't smoke.
- 2 You must ...

Pronunciation

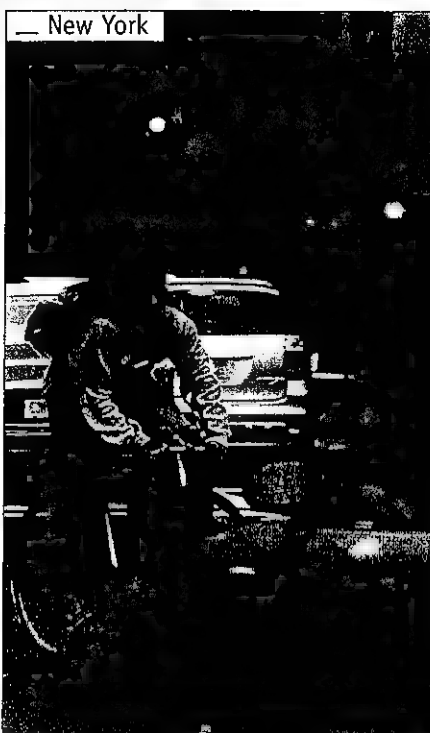
must/mustn't

58.2 We don't usually pronounce the *t* in *must*. Listen and repeat.

- 1 I must go.
- 2 You mustn't do that.
- 3 We must leave.
- 4 We mustn't swim here.
- 5 I must get up.
- 6 You mustn't smoke.
- 7 You must be careful.
- 8 We mustn't go out.

59 SKILLS

1 59.1 Listen. Choose the correct city for each speaker.



2 Listen again. Complete the table.

	1	2	3
How does he/she travel to work?			
How long does it take?			
What problems does he/she mention?			

Language note Time expressions

How long does the journey take?

It takes ... - an hour

- half an hour

- an hour and a half

- an hour and a quarter

- a couple of hours

- two and a half hours.

3a Complete the text for speaker 1.

- 1 He lives near _____. He works in _____. He walks to the station and he takes the train to _____. Then he _____. The journey takes about _____. The journey is OK, but in the summer _____.

b Write texts for speakers 2 and 3.

4a Your life Answer these questions.

- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 Where do you work/study?
- 3 How do you travel to work/school/university? Why?
- 4 How long does the journey take?
- 5 What things do you do on the journey?
- 6 What problems do you sometimes have?

b Ask and answer with a partner. Compare your journeys.

English in the world

Rush hour

In Britain, the busiest times for transport are: **7.30–9.15 a.m.** The morning **rush hour**. People go to work, and children go to school. There are often long **traffic jams**.

2.45–4 p.m. Children come home from school. A lot of parents take their children to and from school by car. We call this the **school run**.

5–6.30 p.m. The evening rush hour. People go home from work. The trains and buses are usually very crowded and a lot of people have to stand.

Compare this with your country.



- 1 Look back at Episodes 6 and 7. What happened?
- 2 **60.1** Read and listen to the story. What do Sarah and Jordan find?
- 3 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where are Jordan and Sarah?
 - 2 Where is Sarah going?
 - 3 What has Sarah brought for Jordan?
 - 4 What is Jordan doing?
 - 5 Who do the laptops belong to?
 - 6 Who is Anna Harlow?
 - 7 What is the email about?
 - 8 Why doesn't Jordan want to open the email?
 - 9 Why does he open it?
 - 10 What does Sarah do when she reads it?

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday Expressions

Greeting a visitor

Come _____ in.
 This is _____ surprise.
 It's nice _____ see you.
 Take _____ seat.
 Let _____ get you (a cup of coffee).

b Work with a partner. Make conversations.

- A You have come to see B.
 B Welcome A.
 A Say why you have come.
 B Invite A to sit down and offer a drink.
 A Accept or refuse the drink.
 B Respond.

5 Language check. Underline examples of *must/mustn't* or *(don't) have to* in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Sarah Hello!
 Jordan Oh, hi, Sarah. Come on in. This is a surprise.
 Sarah I'm going to the university, but I don't have to be there till 3.30.
 Jordan Well, it's nice to see you. Take a seat. Let me get you a cup of coffee.
 Sarah You don't have to do that. I've brought some coffee and some doughnuts.
 Jordan Sarah, you're wonderful. Peter's a lucky man.



Sarah You look busy.
 Jordan Yes. We have to check these laptops from Starlight Properties.
 Sarah They bought Peter's old offices.
 Jordan Yes. There's a problem with the email program on this one. It ...
 Sarah Look! There's an email from Anna Harlow. That's Russell's girlfriend.
 Jordan Oh, yes. Subject: 'The Coffee Shop'. Why is she writing to Starlight about that?
 Sarah Well, come on. Let's have a look at it.
 Jordan No, we mustn't open emails.
 Sarah I won't give you your coffee and doughnut if you don't open it.
 Jordan You're a hard woman, Sarah. I hope Peter knows!



1 61.1 Listen and repeat.



1 a washing machine



3 a microwave



5 a kettle



7 a hairdryer



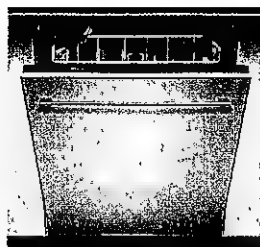
9 a clock radio



11 a light bulb



13 an electric fan



2 a dishwasher



4 a toaster



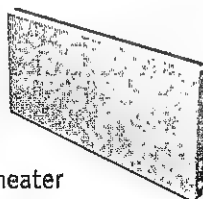
6 a vacuum cleaner



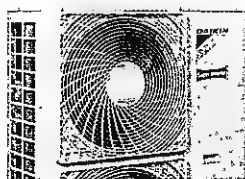
8 a shaver



10 a DVD player



12 a heater



14 an air conditioner

2 61.2 Drill. Listen. Where are the things?



1 We're looking for a DVD player.
The DVD players are over there.

3 Where do you use the things in exercise 1? Write them in the table.

living room	DVD player
kitchen	microwave
bathroom	
bedroom	

4 Complete the expressions with the verbs.

	cook	do	lay	tidy
	take out	clean	make	

- 1 _____ the beds
breakfast
- 2 _____ the shopping
the washing-up
the ironing
- 3 _____ the room
the garden
- 4 _____ the windows
the car
- 5 _____ the dinner
- 6 _____ the table
- 7 _____ the rubbish

Subject / object questions

Do you do the washing-up?
What jobs do you do in the house?
BUT
Who does the ironing?
Who makes the beds?

5a **Your life** Look at the household jobs in exercise 4. Which ones do you do?

b Ask and answer with a partner.

Do you make the beds?

OR Who makes the beds in your house?



62 GRAMMAR

1 62.1 Read and listen.

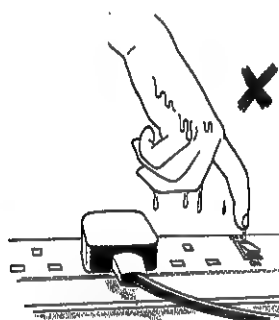
SAFETY IN THE HOME



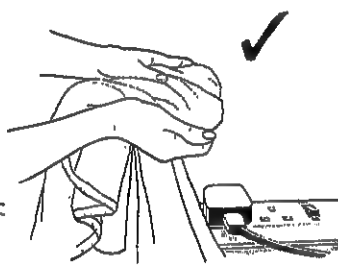
1 You **shouldn't** stand on a chair to reach things.



You **should** use a stepladder.



2 You **shouldn't** touch electrical things with wet hands.



You **should** dry your hands first.

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 112.

should/shouldn't

We use **should** and **shouldn't** + verb for advice.

You **should** use a stepladder.

Use a stepladder.
It's safer.

You **shouldn't** stand on a chair.

Don't stand on a chair.
It's dangerous.

NOT You **shouldn't** to use a stepladder.

3 Complete the sentences with **You should** or **You shouldn't**.

- 1 _____ put a lot of salt on your food.
- 2 _____ eat fruit and vegetables.
- 3 _____ do some exercise every day.
- 4 _____ smoke.
- 5 _____ drive when you're tired.
- 6 _____ laugh a lot.
- 7 _____ drink alcohol and drive.
- 8 _____ sleep for seven or eight hours a night.

4a Match the advice with the problems.

- 1 I'm very tired. e
- 2 I've got toothache. g
- 3 I feel ill. c
- 4 It's cold in here. a
- 5 I'm broke. h
- 6 It's raining. b
- 7 I've lost my wallet. d
- 8 The police stopped me today. f

- a Don't leave the window open.
- b Take an umbrella.
- c Don't go to work today.
- d Phone the police.
- e Go to bed.
- f Don't drive so fast.
- g Go to the dentist's.
- h Look for a job.

b Work with a partner. Ask and answer.

Use **You should** or **You shouldn't**.

A What's wrong?

B I'm very tired.

A You **should** go to bed.

5a Your life Write two pieces of advice for these things. Use **should** / **shouldn't**.

- a healthy life
- safety in the home
- saving money
- safety on the roads

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

English in the world

Warning signs

What are these signs in your language?

1



DANGER!
Do not touch

2



TAKE CARE!
Very hot water

3



Mind your head

4



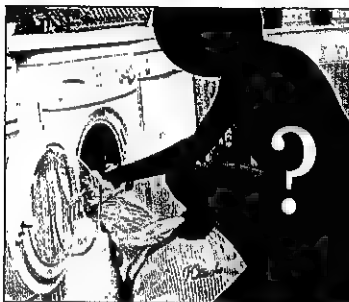
CAUTION!
Floor may be slippery

1 **63.1** Read and listen to the text. Answer the questions.

- Which country is it about?
- What does the new law say?

I promise to love, honour, and wash up

Who does the housework? Who looks after children and old people?



In most couples it's probably 'the wife', but one country wants to change that. That country is Spain. At the moment, 40 per cent of Spanish men say that they don't do any housework. Their wives, however, spend six hours a day on it. In 2005 the Spanish Parliament passed a new law. Now husbands have to share jobs in the home.

In a café in Madrid we asked people about the law. Conchita Rodriguez: 'Most women go out to work. So, in my opinion, they shouldn't do all the housework too, but they usually do. That isn't fair.'

Juan Salgado: 'Yes, it's a good idea, but I think a lot of men already help in the house. I cook and I take the children to school, so it won't change anything for me and my wife.'

Laura Pino: 'I go out to work, but I prefer to do the



housework. I don't want my husband in the kitchen. He repairs the car and takes out the rubbish. I cook and clean. It's simple.'

Pablo Calvache is getting married soon: 'It's OK for women,' he says. 'They learn how to cook and iron when they're young, but we don't. I don't know how to do those things.'

Margarita Uria is a member of the Spanish Parliament. She produced the new law. She agrees. 'Men don't help in the house,' she says. 'But it isn't all their fault. We women should teach them when they're children.'

Will it work? Laura Pino doesn't think so: 'If the man doesn't help, what will his wife do – take him to the police station?'

But Conchita Rodriguez is more positive. 'It will probably happen slowly, but as more women go out to work, things must change.'

2 Are these statements true (T) or false (F)?

- Forty per cent of Spanish men help with the housework.
- Married women in Spain spend six hours a day on housework.
- The Spanish Parliament made the new law in 2005.
- The people are in a café in Madrid.
- They're all women.
- All the people in the café think the law is a good idea.

3 Match two facts with each name.

Conchita Rodriguez a _____
 Juan Salgado _____
 Laura Pino _____
 Pablo Calvache _____
 Margarita Uria _____

- can't cook.
- doesn't want her husband's help with the cooking.
- introduced the new law.
- says it isn't right at the moment.
- thinks boys should learn how to cook.
- thinks the law won't change his life.
- doesn't think the law will work.
- will soon have a wife.
- says that he already does housework.
- doesn't think things will change quickly.

Language note Expressing opinions 3

In my opinion, ... It's a good idea.
 I (don't) think that... I (don't) agree.
 ... I (don't) think so.

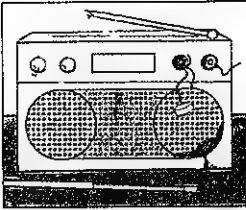
4 **Your life** Think about the opinions in the text. Discuss with the class.

- Which opinions do you agree with?
- Is the Spanish law a good idea?
- Do men and women share domestic jobs in your country?

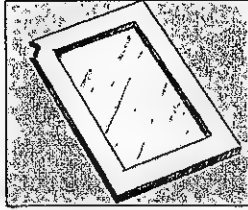
5 **Writing** Use the text. Write a paragraph expressing your opinions.

In my country, men and women _____.
 I (don't) think the Spanish law is a good idea, because _____. I (don't) agree with _____. I think _____. I (don't) think the law will work, because _____.

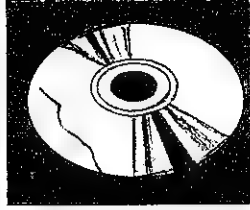
1 64.1 Listen and repeat.



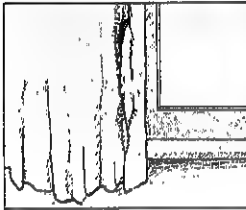
1 It isn't working.



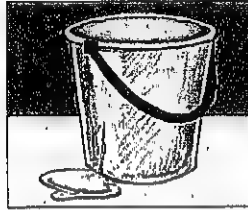
2 It's damaged.



3 It's scratched.



4 It's torn.



5 It's leaking.



6 It's got a hole in it.

2a 64.2 Read and listen.



Assistant Hello. Can I help you?

Customer Yes, I bought this hairdryer yesterday, but it isn't working.

Assistant Oh, I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?

Customer Yes, please.

Assistant Just a moment. ... I'm sorry, we haven't got any more like that.

Customer Oh well, can I have a refund, then, please?

Assistant Yes, of course. Have you got the receipt?

Customer Yes. Here you are.

Assistant Thank you.

b Practise the conversation with a partner.

3 Complete the expressions.

Dealing with faults

I b_____ this hairdryer yesterday.

It isn't w_____.

I'm s_____ about that.

Would you like to e_____ it?

Can I have a r_____, please?

Have you got the r_____?

4a 64.3 Listen to four conversations.

Answer the questions each time.

1 What did he/she buy?

2 When did he/she buy it?

3 What's wrong with it?

4 Does he/she exchange it or get a refund?

b Work with a partner. Make the conversations. Use the information in exercise 4a.

Assistant Hello. Can I help you?

Customer Yes, I bought this jumper at the weekend, but it's got a hole in it.

5 Speaking Work with a partner. Make new conversations for these situations.

1 You bought a camera. It isn't working.

2 You bought a saucepan. It's leaking.

3 You bought a toaster. It's scratched.

4 You bought a DVD player. It's damaged.

5 You bought a sheet. It's torn.

Pronunciation

Negative auxiliary verbs

1 64.4 Listen.

one syllable

two syllables

won't

shouldn't

2 Put the words in the correct column.

doesn't don't can't mustn't isn't
aren't wasn't weren't haven't hasn't

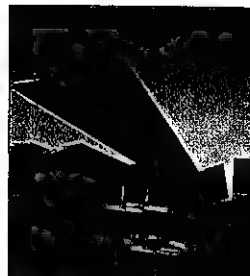
3 64.5 Listen, check, and repeat.

1 **65.1** Listen and repeat.

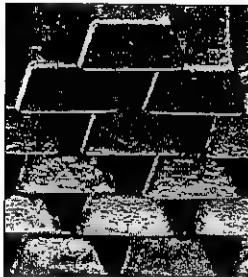
1 wood



2 paper



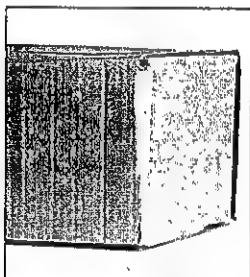
3 metal



4 gold



5 silver



6 cardboard



7 plastic



8 cotton



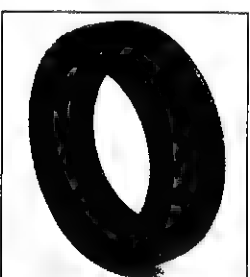
9 wool



10 glass



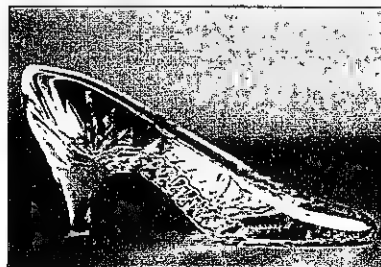
11 leather



12 rubber

What's that made of?
Is it made of glass?

No, it isn't. It's
made of plastic.



2 Think of something that is made of each material.

Pencils are made of wood.

Language note Word building 4

This belt is made of leather.

It's a leather belt.

BUT

a wooden toy (wood)

woollen gloves (wool)

3 **65.2** Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

1 These cups are made of paper.

They're paper cups.

2 This door is made of glass.

It's a glass door.

4 Describe some of the things around you.

- things that you're wearing

a silver watch

- things in your classroom

a wooden desk

- things in your bag, briefcase, or pockets

a leather purse

5 **65.3** Listen. Which of the materials in exercise 1 does the man mention?6 **Your life** Discuss these questions.

1 What things do you recycle?

2 Where do you take them?

3 Why should people recycle things?

Pronunciation

Sentence stress

65.4 Listen and repeat.

1 It's made of leather.

2 It's made of glass.

3 They're made of cotton.

4 It's made of gold.

5 They're made of metal.

1 66.1 Read and listen.



Nick Kool makes models. He doesn't make them for a hobby. The models are made by Nick and his colleagues for TV programmes. Each model is built very carefully, but most of them are destroyed.

This street was seen in a history programme. Several models were needed for the programme. It took over four weeks to make each model, but they were destroyed in seconds.

'Everything is checked again and again,' says Nick. 'You don't get a second chance.'



2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Passives

Active Nick makes the models.

Passive The models are made by Nick.

Active Nick checks a model again and again.

Passive A model is checked again and again by Nick.

Each pair of sentences has the same meaning.

3 Make sentences about Nick's work. Use the cues.

1 Photographs are studied.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Photographs/study | 5 An explosion/produce |
| 2 The models/plan | 6 The model/destroy |
| 3 The buildings/make | 7 The explosion/film |
| 4 They/paint | 8 The programme/see on TV |

4a Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Past simple passive

We can use the passive in any tense.

Present

The model is checked very carefully.

The models are used in TV programmes.

Past

The model was checked very carefully.

The models were used in a TV programme last year.

b Change the sentences in exercise 3 into the past tense.

1 Photographs were studied.

5a Nick is talking about one of the models. Put the verbs into the past simple passive.

The model in this picture was built (build) one sixth of normal size. I can't show you the model, because it

² _____ (destroy) for a TV programme.

It ³ _____ (make) from wood and paper.

The buildings and streets ⁴ _____ (build) first.

Then the small things ⁵ _____ (add).

Children's toys ⁶ _____ (use) for things

like bicycles and plants. Shop signs ⁷ _____

(paint) by hand. These small things are

very important. When the model

⁸ _____ (see) on TV, people thought it

was real. The street ⁹ _____ (use) in a

history programme. It ¹⁰ _____ (show)

on TV last year.

b 66.2 Listen and check.

6a Speaking Answer the questions.

- 1 What things are produced in your country?
- 2 Are the things sold to other countries?
- 3 Where were your clothes made?
- 4 Where was your car/TV made?
- 5 Where were your shoes made?
- 6 Where was your watch made?

b Ask two people in your class. Compare their answers with yours.

1 **67.1** Listen. Which country is each festival celebrated in?

1 Loy Krathong



2 The Day of the Dead



3 Maslenitsa



2 Listen again. Write the number of the festival with the correct answers. Some answers are not needed.

1 Why is each festival celebrated?

- _____ to say thank you for the sun
- _____ to remember dead friends and relatives
- _____ to say goodbye to winter
- _____ to celebrate the new year
- _____ to say thank you for water

2 When is each festival celebrated?

- _____ at the end of the rainy season
- _____ on the second Sunday in November
- _____ at the beginning of winter
- _____ on 2 November
- _____ at the end of winter

3a Answer these questions about each festival.

- 1 What do the people make?
- 2 What are the things made from?
- 3 What happens to the things?
- 4 Are any special kinds of food eaten?

b Listen again and check.

4 Writing Write about a festival in your country. Follow the pattern.

I'm from ____ (country). My favourite festival is ____ (name). It's celebrated ____ (when?). It's to ____ (why?). For the festival, ____ are made from _____. They are ____ (What do people do with the things?). People eat lots of ____ and they ____ (What things do they do?). I like ____, because ____ (How do you feel about the festival?).

English in the world

Greetings cards

The average person in Britain sends 53 greetings cards every year. Most of them (85%) are bought by women. Cards are usually sent for:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| - birthdays | - anniversaries |
| - Christmas | - weddings |
| - Valentine's Day | - births |
| - Mother's Day | - deaths |
| - Father's Day | - passing exams. |

Compare this with your country.

- 1 Look back at Episodes 7 and 8. What happened?
- 2 **68.1** Read and listen to the story. Who must Peter, Sarah, and Jordan stop?
- 3 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Who bought Peter's old offices?
 - 2 When was the factory sold?
 - 3 What other things did Starlight buy?
 - 4 What does Starlight want to do?
 - 5 Why do they need The Coffee Shop?
 - 6 Are Starlight going to open a new café?
 - 7 Who are Cindy and Ryan going to sell The Coffee Shop to?
 - 8 Who owns Starlight Properties?
 - 9 Why does Anna Harlow want The Coffee Shop?
 - 10 Where are Cindy and Ryan going?

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday expressions Responding to information

Yes, that's r_____.
 Oh, I didn't k_____ that.
 Are you s_____?
 Yes, y_____ right.
 That's t_____.

b Use the expressions. Complete the conversation.

- A We've got an exam today.
 B A_____?
 A Yes, the teacher told us on Friday.
 B Oh, _____. I wasn't here.
 A Look, it's here in my notebook.
 B Y_____. Is it on the passive?
 A Y_____.
 B Oh dear. And the passive isn't easy.
 A T_____.

5 Language check. Underline examples of the passive in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Jordan Look at this map, Peter. Your old offices here were sold to Starlight Properties.

Peter Yes, that's right.

Sarah This factory and all the other properties in the block were sold last year, too.

Jordan And they were all bought by Starlight.

Peter Oh, I didn't know that.

Jordan Well, it was done very quietly.

Sarah Starlight wants to build a big shopping centre, it seems.

Peter Are you sure?

Jordan Yes, it's all here in the computer.

Peter I see. And now Starlight owns the whole block.

Sarah Except The Coffee Shop. And without The Coffee Shop, they can't build their shopping centre.



Peter But aren't Starlight going to open a new café?

Jordan No. They just said that so that Cindy and Ryan will sell The Coffee Shop.

Sarah And it's worked.

Peter Yes, you're right. But they aren't selling it to Starlight. They're selling it to Anna Harlow.

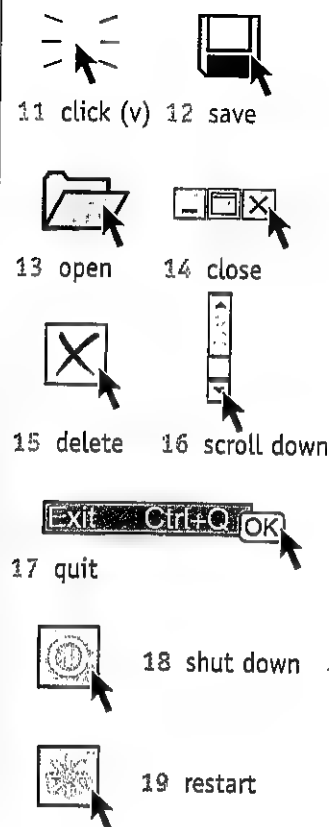
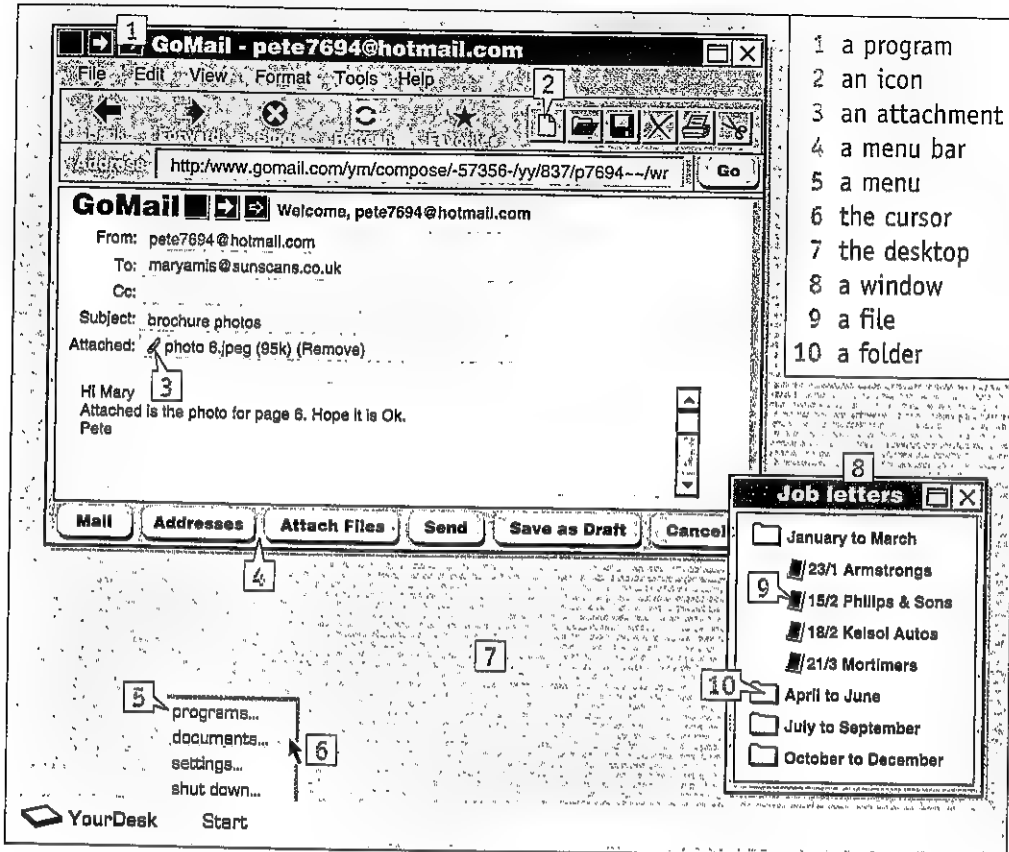
Jordan That's true, but Starlight Properties is owned by Anna Harlow's family.

Sarah She doesn't want to open a shop. She's just buying the property for Starlight.

Peter Well, we must stop her!



Bye, Russell. We're going to sign the contract to sell the café.

1 **69.1** Listen and repeat.

2 Complete the instructions with these verbs.

- 1 Save / Restart your work.
- 2 Scroll down / Quit the program.
- 3 Click on / Save the icon.
- 4 Delete / Shut down the file.
- 5 Save / Scroll down the menu.
- 6 Shut down / Close the computer.
- 7 Restart / Open the computer.

3 **69.2** Drill. Listen. Say the sentence.

- 1 Click on the icon.
OK. I've clicked on the icon.
- 2 Quit that program.
OK. I've quit that program.

4 **69.3** Listen. Someone is phoning a computer helpline. Number the words in the order that you hear them.

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| — file | 1 desktop |
| — menu bar | — window |
| — icon | — save |
| — restart | — program |
| — quit | — scroll down |

5 **Your life** Work with a partner. Discuss these questions.

- 1 What do you use computers for?
- 2 Do you like using computers?
- 3 How did you learn how to use a computer?
- 4 What kind of computer do you use?

English in the world

Website addresses

1 **www.example.co.uk/time**

We say: w, w, w, dot, example, dot, /kəʊ/, dot, u k, slash, time

2 Write down two website addresses. Say them to your partner.

3 What's your favourite website?

70 GRAMMAR

1 70.1 Read and listen.



Jordan I've fixed the computer which wasn't working.

Cindy Thanks, Jordan. Ryan! Where are the things that you bought from the supermarket?

Ryan They're in the car. I'll get them in a minute.

Cindy Oh, he's so slow.

Jordan You should read the article that's in the paper today. It's about people who do things slowly.

Cindy Really?

Jordan Yes, it says people who do things quickly make a lot of mistakes. People that are slow enjoy life - and are more successful.

Cindy Well, if that's true, I'm married to the most successful man in the world!

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Relative clauses

1 Relative clauses give us more information about people and things.

I've fixed the computer.

I've fixed the computer which wasn't working.

It's about people.

It's about people who do things slowly.

2 A relative clause usually starts with a relative pronoun.

People who/that are slow enjoy life.

You should read the article which/that is in the paper.

3 Complete the sentences. Use *who* or *which*.

- Where's the letter which arrived today?
- That's one of the students _____ studies with Sarah.
- Have you got the magazine _____ was on the table?
- People _____ do things quickly don't enjoy life.
- He's the man _____ fixes our computers.
- Where's the photocopier _____ isn't working?
- That's the film _____ was on TV last week.
- Are they the people _____ go jogging with you?

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Relative clauses: subject and object

We can use a relative clause to join sentences.

Read the article. The article's in the newspaper.

Read the article that's in the newspaper. (subject)

Where are the things? You bought the things.

Where are the things that you bought? (object)

5a Join the sentences. Use *that*.

1 *This is the TV that isn't working.*

1 This is the TV. The TV isn't working.

2 Save the files. You need the files.

3 This is the car. I want to buy the car.

4 This is the icon. You click on the icon.

5 He's the man. I saw the man yesterday.

6 She's the woman. The woman phoned.

b Change the sentences. Use *who* or *which*.

6a **Your life** Write down these things.

1 someone who you admire

2 a kind of food which you really like

3 a film that you've seen recently

4 something that you really want to do

5 a book that you want to read

6 a person who has changed your life

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

Now I can ... give further information about people and things.

71 SKILLS

- 1 **71.1** Read and listen. Why do people use Internet dating?
Tick ✓ the reasons mentioned.

- You meet people from other countries.
- You meet a lot of people.
- You always see a photograph of the person.
- You learn something about the person before you meet.



♥ Love online

The Internet is changing our love lives. Millions of single men and women now find a date online.

Websites aren't all the same, so you must choose the website that's best for you. A site that has a lot of young city professionals won't be very good for a middle-aged person who lives in the suburbs and likes gardening.

When you've chosen your website, you must write a good profile of yourself. Here are some ideas that can help:

- 1 Attach a photograph. A lot of people, especially men, won't click on a profile that hasn't got a photograph. Don't use a photo that's over five years old, and don't use one that shows you:
 - in sunglasses
 - in a swimsuit
 - or with an ex-partner.
- 2 Be honest. Don't say that you're a tall, handsome businessman if you're a short, ordinary-looking guy who works in an office. If you do, your first date will probably be your last.
- 3 Be exact. You'll find someone who likes the same things more easily. Don't write: 'I like going to the cinema.' Everybody does. Write about films that you like or a film that you've seen recently.
- 4 Be positive. People don't want to read about the things that you don't like. Write about the things, people, and places that you do like.

People use the Internet because they can meet thousands of people. They can also learn something about the other person before they meet. Will the Internet find your Mr or Ms Right?

- 2 Match the reasons with the advice.

- 1 Choose the right website, because ...
- 2 Attach a photograph, because ...
- 3 Be honest, because ...
- 4 Be exact, because ...
- 5 Be positive, because ...

- a some people won't read your profile if you don't.
- b if not, you might not get another date.
- c they are all different.
- d people prefer reading about things that you like.
- e you're more likely to find someone who has similar interests.

- 3 Read these Internet dating entries. What mistakes are these people making?

www.husbandandwife.com

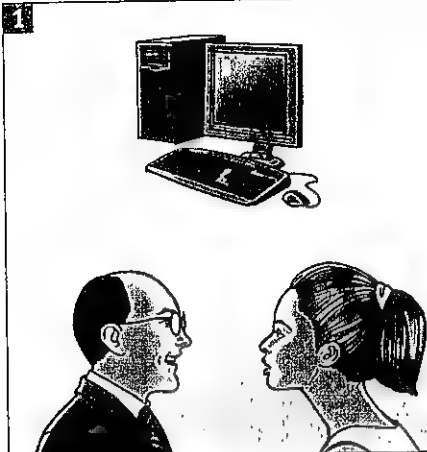
- 1 I hate going to parties and I can't stand people who talk a lot.
- 2 I love listening to music and watching TV.
- 3 I drive a Ferrari and I often have lunch with Madonna.
- 4 Hi. My name's Fiona and I love sport. (No photo attached.)
- 5 I'm not looking for someone who wants to get married.
- 6 Here's a photo of me with my ex-wife.

- 4 **Your life** Write your profile. Use the model below. Change the words in bold.

I'm Owen. I'm 35 and I'm from **Cardiff** in **South Wales**. I'm a **psychologist** and I work in a **hospital**. I'm **medium height** and **quite slim**. I've got **blue eyes** and **blond hair**. I like **walking**. Most weekends I **go walking in the mountains**. I like people who **are active and sporty**. I'm **looking for someone who wants to share my outdoor activities**.

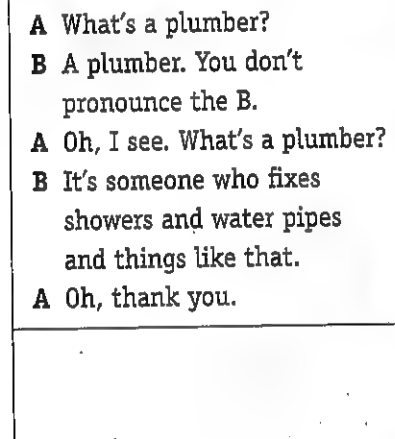
1 72.1 Read and listen.

1




A On a computer, what do you call the thing which you look at?
B The screen.
A Screen? How do you spell that?
B It's S-C-R-double E-N.
A Oh, OK. Thanks.


2



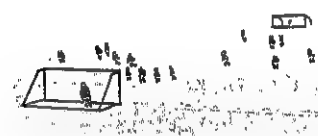
A What's a plumber?
B A plumber. You don't pronounce the B.
A Oh, I see. What's a plumber?
B It's someone who fixes showers and water pipes and things like that.
A Oh, thank you.



3



A What do you call the place where you play football?
B Do you mean a stadium?
A No, the thing that the players play on.
B Oh, the pitch. It's a football pitch.
A Thank you.



2 Complete the expressions with these words.

mean what call how

Now I can ask about things that I

What do you _____ ... ?
_____ 's a plumber?_____ do you spell that?
Do you _____ a stadium?

3 72.2 Listen. Katrin is staying in England. Choose the correct answers.

- What does she want?
a a plug
b an adaptor
c a hairdryer
- What does her brother do?
a a salesman
b a builder
c a civil engineer
- What does she ask about?
a keys
b a screensaver
c a keyboard

Definitions

It's someone who/that fixes showers.
It's something which/that you eat.
It's a place where you play football.

4a Speaking Choose an example of each one of these:

- a job
- a place
- something in a kitchen
- something that you wear
- a family relation
- an electrical appliance.

b Describe the things to a partner. He/She must guess what it is.

- A What do you call someone who cooks?
B Do you mean a cook?
A No. This is someone who works ...

Pronunciation

/s/ or /z/

1 72.3 Listen.

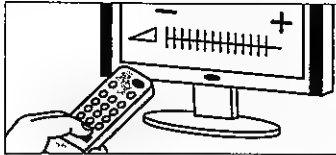
/s/ /z/
person choose

2a Put the words in the correct column.

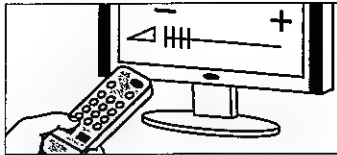
possible thousand cursor
salesman positive website
screensaver businessman

b 72.4 Listen, check, and repeat.

1 73.1 Listen and repeat.



1 turn up



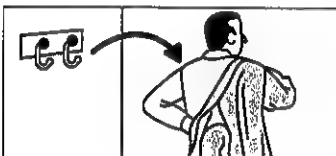
2 turn down



3 go away



4 come back



5 put on



6 take off



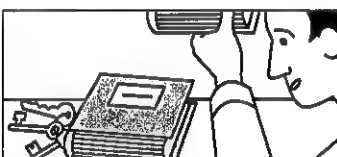
7 come in



8 go out



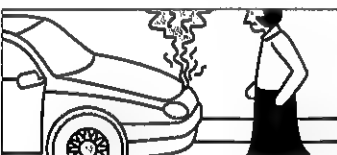
9 try on



10 look for



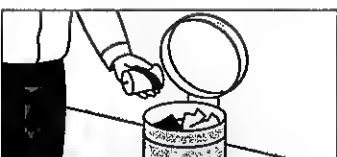
11 look after



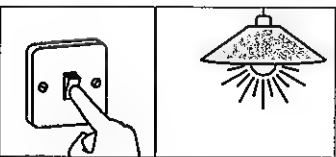
12 break down



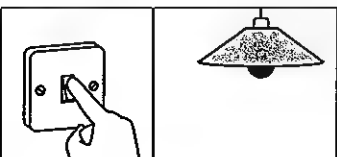
13 get up



14 throw away



15 switch on



16 switch off

2 73.2 Drill. Listen. Say the opposite.

- 1 Turn up the TV.
No. Turn down the TV.

3 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Phrasal verbs

verb	particle
get	up
come	in

2 With some verbs the two parts show the meaning.

look + up = look up



look + down = look down



look + back = look back



3 With some verbs you can't see the meaning from the two parts.



look after



break down

4 73.3 Listen. There are two verbs in each conversation. Number them.

- look after ____ go out ____
 switch off ____ sit down 1
 stand up ____ look for ____
 put on ____ go away ____
 come in 1 switch on ____

5 Your life Ask and answer with a partner.

- What time do you get up at weekends?
- How often do you go out with your friends?
- Do you look after anyone?
- What do you take off first when you get home?
- What was the last thing that you threw away?
- What things do you often have to look for?
- What time do you normally switch off the TV in the evening?
- What clothes do you always try on before you buy them?

74 GRAMMAR

1 74.1 Read and listen.

Lucy is at a conference. She's met an old friend from college.



Lucy Lovely to see you again, Alma. I haven't seen you since your 21st birthday party. Do you still live in London?

Alma No, I don't. I lived here for a few years after college, but then I moved to York.

Lucy Are you married?

Alma Yes, I am. I've been married since last February.

Lucy Congratulations. How long have you lived in York?

Alma Oh, I've lived there for nearly three years now.

Lucy Do you remember that guy who was studying Engineering? Oh, what was his name? Ben Driver. Wasn't he from York?

Alma Yes, he was. I ...

Lucy He was so boring! I haven't seen him since we left college.

Alma I have. I saw him this morning actually. He's my husband!

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 113.

Present perfect: for and since

- 1 I've lived there for six years. = I still live there now.
I lived there for five years. = I don't live there now.

- 2 **for + a period of time** for three years
since + a point of time since last February

3 Write for or since.

- 1 We've been here since yesterday.
- 2 I've worked here _____ two weeks.
- 3 They've been married _____ 1995.
- 4 We haven't seen each other _____ ages.
- 5 She's been away _____ five days.
- 6 I've had a headache _____ this morning.

4 Put the verbs in brackets into the present perfect or past simple.

- 1 I've been at work since eight o'clock, but I'm going to leave soon. (be)
- 2 We _____ on holiday last week. (be)
- 3 I _____ at the restaurant for an hour, but then I left. (wait)
- 4 We must get a new car. We _____ this one for ten years. (have)
- 5 I'm a vegetarian. I _____ meat since I was a teenager. (not eat)
- 6 I _____ for nearly twenty years, but I stopped last year. (smoke)

5 74.2 Listen. Tick ✓ the correct sentence.

- 1 a She works there now. ✓
b She doesn't work there now.
- 2 a He's a policeman.
b He isn't a policeman.
- 3 a They're married.
b They aren't married.
- 4 a They still live in France.
b They don't live in France now.
- 5 a She works at the bank.
b She doesn't work at the bank.

6 Writing Complete the sentences.

- 1 I live in _____.
- 2 I've lived there for/since _____.
- 3 I'm a _____ (job).
- 4 I've been a _____ for/since _____.
- 5 I work/study in/at _____.
- 6 I've worked/studied there for/since _____.
- 7 In my free time, I _____.
- 8 I've played/done for/since _____.
- 9 My parents have been/were married for/since _____.

Pronunciation

Vowel sounds

74.3 Listen. Choose the odd one out.

- 1 down out throw
- 2 back take break
- 3 look up put
- 4 there here year
- 5 was saw off
- 6 find sit since
- 7 turn work fork
- 8 won gone done

75 SKILLS

1 **75.1** Listen. Paul and Helen are at a university reunion. Answer the questions.

- 1 Which person ...
 - has worked for the same company since university?
 - has had a lot of different jobs?
- 2 Who are Troy and Georgina?



2a Write Paul (P) or Helen (H).

- 1 H is divorced.
- 2 P is married.
- 3 _____ has travelled a lot.
- 4 _____ has got three children.
- 5 _____ lives in Manchester.
- 6 _____ worked for an insurance company.
- 7 _____ lives in London.
- 8 _____ shares a flat with a friend.
- 9 _____ lives in a house in the suburbs.
- 10 _____ works for a computer company.
- 11 _____ works for a bank.
- 12 _____ was a singer in a band.

b Listen again. Check your ideas.

3a Paul and Helen mention these periods of time. Why?

- six months
- a couple of years
- three years
- four years
- nine years

b Listen again. Check your ideas.

4 What do Paul and Helen think about each other's life?

5a Speaking You've met an old friend after 15 years. Think about your answers to these questions.

- 1 What do you do?
- 2 How long have you been a ... ?
- 3 Where do you live/work?
- 4 How long have you lived/worked there?
- 5 Where did you live/work before?
- 6 How long did you live/work there?
- 7 Are you married?
- 8 How long have you been married?
- 9 Have you got any children?
- 10 What do you do in your free time?
- 11 How long have you done .../played ... ?

b Work with a partner. Make the conversation. Use the questions.

English in the world

Reunions

Universities and some schools in Britain and the USA usually have reunions for their former students. They often have a magazine, too, with news of former students' lives.

Reunions are big events in the USA. They are normally used to raise money for the university or school.

Now there are websites, too, where people can find old friends.



Compare this with your country.

- 1 Look back at Episodes 8 and 9. What happened?
- 2 **76.1** Read and listen to the story.
 - 1 Where are Ryan and Cindy going? Why?
 - 2 Does Sarah speak to Ryan or Cindy?
- 3 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?
 - 1 Russell hasn't put any petrol in the car.
 - 2 Someone answers the phone at The Coffee Shop.
 - 3 Russell is using Ryan's mobile.
 - 4 Cindy hasn't got her mobile with her.
 - 5 Russell knows the solicitor's name.
 - 6 The solicitor's office isn't near the café.
 - 7 Anna Harlow is at The Coffee Shop.
 - 8 Russell saw Anna three days ago.

4a Complete the expressions.

Everyday Expressions: Telephoning

There's _____ reply.
 I'll _____ his mobile.
 It's _____ ringing.
 She hasn't got her phone _____ her.
 It's re-_____.
 Don't hang _____.

b Complete the sentences. Use the expressions.

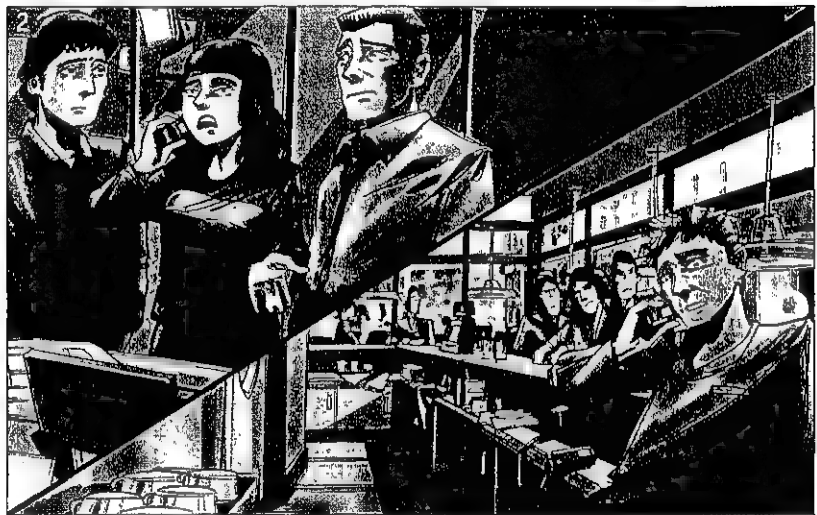
- 1 Oh, wait, one more thing ... just a minute - _____.
- 2 I can't phone her, because _____.
- 3 There's no reply from his office, so _____.
- 4 _____, but nobody's answering it.
- 5 I've tried to phone them, but _____.
- 6 I haven't got my mobile with me because _____.

5 Language check. Underline examples of the present perfect in the story.

6 Work in a group. Practise the story.



Ryan Oh no! Russell hasn't put any petrol in the car again!
 We haven't used it since Monday and it's nearly empty.
Cindy Well, we can get some petrol on the way.



Peter There's no reply at The Coffee Shop.
Sarah I'll try Ryan's mobile. ... It's ringing. Hello, Ryan. It's Sarah. I ...
Russell Hi, Sarah. This is Russell. I've borrowed Dad's mobile.
Sarah Oh, well. Is your dad there?

Russell No. Mum and Dad have gone to the solicitor's. They're going to sign the contract to sell this place.

Sarah Oh, OK. I'll try your mum's mobile.

Russell Actually, she hasn't got her phone with her. It's re-charging here.

Sarah Oh, no! ... Oh, don't hang up, Russell! Here's Jordan.

Jordan Russell, do you know the name of your parents' solicitor?

Russell No, sorry, but it isn't near here, because they've gone in the car.

Jordan What about Anna? Is she there?

Russell Anna? No, I haven't seen her for two weeks. Look. I must go. There are customers in the café. Bye.



It's too late. They're going to sell The Coffee Shop!

1 **77.1** Listen and repeat.

1 tired



2 hungry



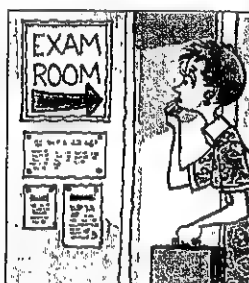
3 thirsty



4 bored



5 interested



6 worried



7 annoyed



8 excited



9 relaxed



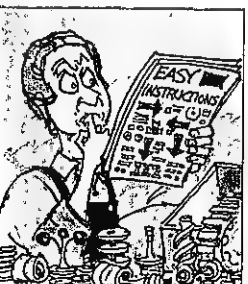
10 embarrassed



11 frightened



12 surprised



13 confused



14 miserable



15 proud

2a **77.2** Listen. How does Mark feel each time?

1 worried

b Listen again. Match the reasons with the feelings from exercise 2a.

1 worried - d

- a There's nothing on TV.
- b He was at a party last night.
- c He's had a day off.
- d He's got an interview tomorrow.
- e He's not sure about the meeting date.
- f His son won a school prize.
- g He didn't have any lunch.
- h His laptop isn't working.

c Complete with **-ed / -ing** adjectives

I don't like this film. I'm **bored**.
The film is **boring**.

I like this book. I'm **interested**.
The book is **interesting**.

3 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 There's a very *interested / interesting* article in the newspaper today.
- 2 I'm *bored / boring*. I've got nothing to do.
- 3 You should go to bed. You look *tired / tiring*.
- 4 That's very *annoyed / annoying*. There's a car in my parking space.
- 5 This horror film is *frightened / frightening*.
- 6 I forgot the Managing Director's name. It was very *embarrassed / embarrassing*.
- 7 He's *excited / exciting*. He's got a new job.
- 8 I don't understand these instructions. They're very *confused / confusing*.

4a **YOU TRY** Give an example of a person, place, or thing for each of these words.1 I think sport is *interesting*.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 interesting | 5 exciting |
| 2 boring | 6 frightening |
| 3 annoying | 7 confusing |
| 4 relaxing | 8 surprising |

b Compare your ideas with a partner.

5 Write six sentences about yourself.

I feel/felt *embarrassed* when ...

1 78.1 Read and listen.



If your house was on fire, you'd get out quickly. However, you'd probably take some things, too. What would you take with you? An insurance company asked people this question. Most men, it seems, would look for something valuable, like their wallet, computer, or CD collection. Most women, however, would save personal things. 'I wouldn't save my purse,' said one woman. 'You can replace things like that. I'd take things that you can't buy like family photographs. I'd save a pet first if we had one.'

2 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 114.

would + verb

1 We use the conditional form with **would** for imaginary or unlikely events.

2 Most people would get out quickly.

I'd save the pet.

Most women would not take the TV.

He wouldn't take the family photos.

3 Would you save your credit cards? Yes, I would.

No, I wouldn't.

Why would you take that?

3a What would you save? Choose your top five things.

I'd save my books. OR I wouldn't save a computer.

- books
- documents and certificates
- a pet
- your wallet or purse
- a computer
- a CD collection
- jewellery
- clothes
- family photos
- your mobile phone

b Ask and answer with a partner. Ask for reasons.

A Would you save your books?

B Yes. I would./No, I wouldn't.

A Why would/wouldn't you save them?

4 Read the examples. Study the rules on page 114.

Second conditional

1 We use **would** in a second conditional sentence for imaginary or unreal conditions.

If their house was on fire, most people would get out quickly.

OR

Most people would get out quickly if their house was on fire.

2 We use:

- the past simple in the *if* clause.

- the conditional with **would** in the main clause.

NOT If their house would be on fire, most people would get out quickly.

5 Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple or conditional form.

1 If I had (have) a year off, I'd travel (travel) round the world.

2 If I _____ (find) a mobile phone, I _____ (not use) it.

3 I _____ (learn) another language if I _____ (have) more time.

4 If someone _____ (steal) my mobile phone, I _____ (contact) the police.

5 I _____ (stay) in bed if it _____ (be) Sunday today.

6 If we _____ (not have) an exam tomorrow, I _____ (come) with you.

6a Speaking What would you do in these situations? Complete the sentences.

1 If I had two extra hours a day, _____.

2 If I found someone's mobile, _____.

3 If I was the boss/headteacher, _____.

4 If I travelled back in time, _____.

5 If I had a year off, _____.

b Ask and answer with a partner.

A What would you do if you had two extra hours a day?

B I'd ...

A Why would you do that?

B Because ...

- 1 **79.1** Read and listen to the text. What is the answer to the question in the title?



If you won the lottery, what would you do with the money? Would you buy a big house, a yacht perhaps, or a fast, expensive sports car? We all dream of buying these things, but would they make us happier?

'No, they wouldn't,' says Rupert Sweeney. He works for a large bank and has studied the psychology of money. 'If you bought a new sports car', he says, 'it would be good at first. Then after a while it wouldn't be new and interesting. It would become normal. So then what would you do? You'd want a faster car or a more expensive one. So in the end your nice sports car would make you unhappy, because you'd always want something better.'

Material things like cars, watches, houses, and clothes only make you happy for a while. We're all a lot richer than we were in the 1950s, but we aren't happier. The things that will really make you happy are:

- doing things that you enjoy and;
- spending time with people that you like.

If you won a lot of money, what should you spend it on then? 'Experiences,' says Rupert Sweeney. 'Learn something new, like water-skiing. Do something that you've always wanted to do. Eat at a five-star restaurant. Visit places that you've never been to. Every experience is special, and experiences get better with time, because we forget the bad things in life. And if you share the experiences with your family and friends, you'll enjoy them again and again with photos, videos, and memories.'

So, if that big cheque ever arrives, forget the fast car and the designer clothes. Book those skydiving lessons for yourself and your friends.

2 **Answer the questions.**

- 1 Where does Rupert Sweeney work?
- 2 What has he studied?
- 3 Why do material things only make us happy for a while?
- 4 What are the things that really make us happy?
- 5 Why do experiences get better with time?
- 6 How can you enjoy experiences again and again?

3 **What examples does the article give of ... ?**

- material things
- experiences

Language note Time expressions

at first	in the end
then	for a (short) while
after a while	again and again

4 **Do you agree with the writer? Why? Why not?**

5 **Your life** Work with a partner. Discuss these questions.

If you won a lot of money, ...

- what things would you buy?
- what activities would you do?
- what new things would you learn?
- what places would you visit?

Who would you do these things with?

Why would you do these things?

Pronunciation

How many syllables?

1 **79.2** Listen. How many syllables are there: 1, 2, 3, or 4?

relaxed interesting psychology bored
material worried tired embarrassed
frightened experience miserable clothes

2 **79.3** Listen, check, and repeat.

1 80.1 Read and listen.

1

18 July

Dear Victoria

Just a note to say thank you for the lovely birthday card and present that you sent. I started the book yesterday and it's very exciting.

I hope you're well.

Love,

Charlotte

2

To: sandrasif36@abc.com

Subject: Thank you

Dear Sandra and Asif

I'm just writing to say thank you for the great party at your place on Saturday. I really enjoyed the evening. The food was delicious and I met some very interesting people.

Hope to see you soon.

All the best,

Mack

2 Read the notes again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who had a birthday recently?
- 2 Who sent her a present?
- 3 What else did she send?
- 4 What was the present?
- 5 Who went to a party?
- 6 Where was the party?
- 7 When was it?
- 8 Was there any food at the party?

3 What do the people describe with these words?

- 1 lovely
- 2 exciting
- 3 great
- 4 delicious
- 5 interesting

4 Complete the expressions.

Saying thank you

Introduction

Just a _____ to say ...

I'm just _____ to say ...

Message

Thank you _____ dinner/the present.

Ending

I hope you're _____.

Hope to see _____ soon.

Signing off

Love,

All _____ best,

Best wishes,

5 Complete the thank-you note.

1 _____ Mario and Silvia

1² _____ to 5 _____

the very nice weekend that I spent with you and your family in Milan. I⁴ _____ the weekend, and thought your house was beautiful. I hope⁵ _____.

All⁶ _____

Andy

6 Writing Write thank-you notes/emails for these situations:

- a friend took you for lunch last week
- someone sent you a CD for your birthday.

English in the world
Parties

At a party in an English-speaking country, the hosts normally provide drinks, but guests often bring a bottle of wine, too. There are usually snacks, such as peanuts and crisps. Sometimes there is food, too. It's normally a buffet. People usually stand up at parties in small groups.

ENGLISH FOR EVERYDAY LIFE

That's Life! Epilogue

- 1 Look back at Episode 10. What happened?
- 2 **81.1** Read and listen to the story.
- 3a What do you think happened at the solicitor's?
- b **81.2** Listen and check your ideas.



Lucy Hi, everyone!
Jordan Hello, Lucy. You're early.
Lucy Yes. I had the afternoon off. Hey. What's wrong?
 Why is everyone so sad?
Peter Sit down, Lucy. We'll tell you all about it.



Jordan So Ryan and Cindy have gone to the solicitor's to sell The Coffee Shop.
Lucy Well, why didn't you phone me? I know their solicitor. The phone number's on the board over there.
Sarah Come on, then. Let's phone them.
Peter But it's already ten past five. They've probably gone home now.
Lucy Yes, you're right. There's no reply.



Peter Would anyone like another cup of coffee?
Sarah Not for me, thanks. I must go.
Lucy Oh, just a minute. Here are Ryan and Cindy.
Jordan They don't look very happy.



Ryan Where's that stupid boy? I'll kill him!
Cindy Calm down, Ryan.
Ryan Calm down? It's all his fault!
Russell Hi, Mum, Dad. Look. I'm really sorry. I didn't know.
Sarah It's true, Ryan. Russell didn't know anything about Anna and Starlight Properties.

STUDY AND REFERENCE SECTION

REVIEW AND WORDLISTS

Lessons 1-8	page 83
Lessons 9-16	page 85
Lessons 17-24	page 87
Lessons 25-32	page 89
Lessons 33-40	page 91
Lessons 41-48	page 93
Lessons 49-56	page 95
Lessons 57-64	page 97
Lessons 65-72	page 99
Lessons 73-80	page 101

GRAMMAR REFERENCE

page 103

AUDIO SCRIPTS

page 115

IRREGULAR VERB LIST

page 123

PRONUNCIATION CHART

page 124

Review 1-8

1 Complete the conversation.

there where Japan pleased
from know in name's

A Hi, my ¹name's Mika.

B ²_____ to meet you, Mika. I'm Jorge.

A ³_____ are you from, Jorge?

B I'm ⁴_____ Argentina. And you?

A I'm from ⁵_____.

B Oh, really? Whereabouts ⁶_____ Japan?

A Osaka. Do you ⁷_____ it?

B Yes, I do. I was ⁸_____ last year.

2 Write four jobs and four work places.

Jobs	Places
a nurse	a salon

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1 Gardeners work ____ | a a uniform. |
| 2 He wears ____ | b a computer. |
| 3 We do shift ____ | c work. |
| 4 I use ____ | d outdoors. |

Grammar

4a Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- Where were you born?
- were you where born?
- what name your 's?
- live in London you do?
- you got have a brother?
- you single are?

b Answer the questions.

5a Complete the sentences. Use the present simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- I live near the school. (live)
- They _____ in a factory. (work)
- She _____ him. (like)
- He _____ two sisters. (have got)
- We usually _____ work at 9 a.m. (start)

b Make the sentences negative.

- I don't live near the school.

Skills

6a Read the text and complete the form.



My name's Omar Hamed and I'm from Egypt. I'm an engineer in Cairo and my wife is a doctor. We've got three children.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Title: <u>Mr</u> | 5 Occupation: _____ |
| 2 First name: _____ | 6 Marital status: _____ |
| 3 Surname: _____ | 7 No. of dependants: _____ |
| 4 Nationality: _____ | |

b Copy the form. Write your personal details.

7 Read the text. Tick ✓ or correct the sentences.

Brigitta Pataki is Hungarian. She works at a radio station in Canada. She starts work at 4.00 p.m. and finishes at 12.00 p.m. Brigitta likes her job, but there are some problems. She works six days a week and she can never go out in the evening.

- Brigitta is from Hungary.
- Brigitta is from Canada.
- She works at a radio station.
- She works in the morning.
- Her shift is eight hours.
- She has two days off a week.

8 Choose the correct word.

- How are/is you?
- Are you busy in/at the moment?
- How are/is Marco?
- Is/Are he busy?

9 Write the missing months.

January, _____, March, _____, May, _____,
July, _____, September, _____, November, _____

10 Complete the conversation.

- A Hello, Mill Dental Practice.
- B Hello, I've got an appointment ²o_ 4 May.
- A What ³t_ is your appointment?
- B It's at 4:30, but I'm afraid I ⁴c_ make it.
- A Would you like to ⁵m_ another appointment?
- B Yes, ⁶p_.
- A Can you ⁷c_ on 7 May at 3.30?
- B Yes, that's ⁸f_.

Wordlist 1-8

- 1** country /'kʌntri/
 Brazil (n) /brə'zɪl/
 Canada (n) /'kænədə/
 Italy (n) /'ɪtəli/
 Poland (n) /'pəʊlənd/
 nationality /,næʃə'næləti/
 American (adj) /ə'merɪ,kən/
 Brazilian (adj) /brə'zɪliən/
 Canadian (adj) /kə'neɪdiən/
 Chinese (adj) /tʃaɪ'niːz/
 Egyptian (adj) /i'dʒɪptjən/
 French (adj) /frentʃ/
 Greek (adj) /griːk/
 Irish (adj) /'aɪrɪʃ/
 Japanese (adj) /dʒæpə'niːz/
 Polish (adj) /'pəʊlɪʃ/
 Russian (adj) /'rʌʃn/
 Spanish (adj) /'spæniʃ/
 I'm from ... (exp) /aɪm frəm/
 My name's ... (exp) /maɪ neɪmz/
 whereabouts (adv) /,weəə'baʊts/
- 2** be born (v) /biː 'bɔːn/
 birthday (n) /'bɜːθdeɪ/
 free time (n) /,friː 'taɪm/
 last name (n) /laːst neɪm/
 live (v) /lɪv/
 married (adj) /'mærid/
 near (prep) /nɪə(r)/
- 3** personal details (n) /'pɜːsənl ,dɪteɪlz/
 surname /'sɜːneɪm/
 title (n) /'taɪtl/
 marital status (n) /'mærtɪl ,stetəs/
 divorced (adj) /dɪ'vɔːst/
 single (adj) /'sɪŋɡl/
 separated (adj) /'sepəreɪtɪd/
 widowed (adj) /'wɪdəʊd/
 gender (n) /'dʒendə(r)/
 female (adj) /'fiːmeɪl/
 male (adj) /meɪl/
 date of birth (n) /deɪt əv 'bɜːθ/
 dependant (n) /dɪ'pendənt/
 no. (abbrev = number) /'nʌmbər/
 occupation (n) /,ɒkju'peɪʃn/
 contact details (n) /'kɒntækt ,dɪteɪlz/
- 4** at the moment (adv) /æt ðə 'məʊmənt/
 busy (adj) /'bɪzi/
 these days (exp) /'ðiːz deɪz/
 actor (n) /'æktə(r)/
 advertising agency (n) /'ædvətaɪzɪŋ ,eɪdʒ(ə)nsi/
 computer engineer (n) /kəm'pjutə(r) ,endʒɪn'ɪə(r)/
 magazine company (n) /,mæɡə'ziːn ,kʌmpəni/
 personal assistant (n) /'pɜːsənl ə'sɪst(ə)nt/
- 5** artist (n) /'ɑːtɪst/
 electrician (n) /ɪ,lek'trɪʃn/
 flight attendant (n) /'flaɪt ə,tendənt/
 gardener (n) /'ɡɑːdnə(r)/
 hairdresser (n) /'heədresə(r)/
 lorry driver (n) /'lɒri ,draɪvə(r)/
 plumber (n) /'plʌmə(r)/
 police officer (n) /pə'liːs ,ɒfɪsə(r)/
 factory (n) /'fæktri/
 hotel (n) /həʊ'tel/
 studio (n) /'stjuːdiəʊ/
 salon (n) /'sælɒn/
 do shift work (v) /,duː 'ʃɪft ,wɜːk/
 look after people (v) /,lʊk 'ɑːftə ,piːpl/
 repair things (v) /rɪ'peə(r) ,θɪŋz/
 use a computer (v) /,juːz ə kəm'pjutə(r)/
 wear a uniform (v) /,weə(r) ə 'juːnɪ,fɔːm/
 work outdoors (v) /,wɜːk aʊt'dɔːz/
- 6** at night (adv) /æt naɪt/
 during the day (adv) /,djʊərɪŋ ðə 'deɪ/
 every day (adv) /,evri 'deɪ/
 normally (adv) /'nɔːməli/
 often (adv) /'ɒfn/
 usually (adv) /'juːʒuəli/
 finish work (v) /,fɪnɪʃ 'wɜːk/
 get home (v) /,get 'həʊm/
 go to bed (v) /,ɡəʊ tə 'bed/
 gorgeous (adj) /'ɡɔːdʒəs/
 have a meal (v) /,hæv ə 'miːl/
 old people's home (n) /,əʊld 'piːplz ,həʊm/
 start work (v) /,stɑːt 'wɜːk/
 What does she do? (exp) /,wɒt dɪz ʃi 'duː/
- 7** all the time (adv) /,ɔːl ðə 'taɪm/
 always (adv) /'ɔːlweɪz/
 never (adv) /'nevə(r)/
 rarely (adv) /'reəli/
 sometimes (adv) /'sʌmətaɪmz/
 electrical engineer (n) /ɪ,lek'trɪkl endʒɪn'ɪə(r)/
 workplace (n) /'wɜːkpleɪs/
 oil rig (n) /'ɔɪl rɪɡ/
 power station (n) /'paʊə(r) ,steɪʃn/
 day shift (n) /'deɪ ʃɪft/
 get seasick (v) /,get 'siːsɪk/
 night shift (n) /'naɪt ʃɪft/
 on duty /ɒn 'djuːti/
 telephone banking (n) /'telɪfəʊn ,bæŋkɪŋ/
 working hours (n pl) /'wɜːkɪŋ aʊəz/
- 8** I can't make that. (exp) /aɪ kaɪnt 'meɪk ðæt/
 afternoon (n) /,ɑːftə'nuːn/
 appointment (n) /ə'pɔɪntmənt/
 dental practice (n) /'dentl ,præktɪs/
 interview (n) /'ɪntəvjʊː/

Review 9-16

Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct verb for each collocation.

- 1 They *go / make* shopping on Sunday.
- 2 I *do / have* a shower in the evening.
- 3 He always *goes / gets* up at 6.50 a.m.
- 4 We *do / make* the housework on Sunday.
- 5 She usually *has / does* a rest in the afternoon.

2 Complete the sentences.

got married	met	grew up
died	was born	had

- 1 Elvis Presley was born in 1935.
- 2 He _____ in Mississippi in the USA.
- 3 He _____ his future wife in Germany.
- 4 They _____ on 1 May 1967.
- 5 They _____ a daughter called Lisa Marie.
- 6 He _____ in 1977, aged 42.

Grammar

3 Write the past simple of the verbs.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 go <u>went</u> | 5 be _____ |
| 2 hurry _____ | 6 have _____ |
| 3 stop _____ | 7 arrive _____ |
| 4 leave _____ | 8 put _____ |

4a Make sentences with the past simple. Use the cues.

- 1 Yesterday *was* a good day for Julio.
- 1 Yesterday */ be / a* good day for Julio.
- 2 He */ meet / his* friends for lunch.
- 3 His boss */ be / away*.
- 4 He */ go /* home early.
- 5 His noisy neighbours */ be / away*.
- 6 He */ watch / a* football match on TV.

b Make the sentences negative.

Yesterday *wasn't* a good day for Julio.

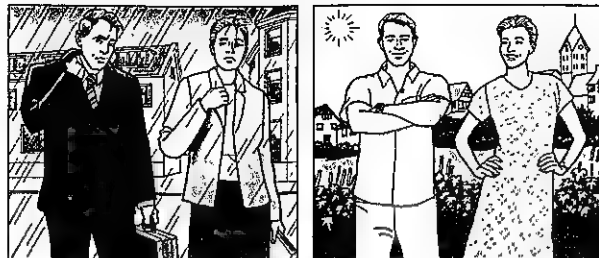
5a Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 Where did you go yesterday?
- 1 Where you did yesterday go ?
- 2 you speak to Who did ?
- 3 you Were at work ?
- 4 you Did on go a date ?
- 5 time you What did to bed go ?

b Answer the questions. Say what you did yesterday.

Skills

6 Read the text. Answer the questions.



Hans and Ilse Braun lived in Berlin. Hans had a good job in a bank and Ilse was a French teacher. However, they weren't happy because they worked long hours and didn't spend much time together. In 2003 they decided to change their lives. They sold their house and bought a language school in France. Now Ilse teaches German and Hans writes books. They live in a flat near the school and are very happy.

- 1 Where did Hans and Ilse live?
- 2 Where did Hans work?
- 3 Why were they unhappy?
- 4 When did they decide to change their lives?
- 5 Which country did they move to?
- 6 What does Ilse do now?

7 Match the halves of the expressions.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 That's _____ | a really? |
| 2 Oh, _____ | b you mean. |
| 3 I heard _____ | c true. |
| 4 I see what _____ | d about that. |

8 Complete the conversations.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|-----------------|----|------|
| news | done | congratulations | go | luck |
|------|------|-----------------|----|------|
- 1 A How did Jaime's exam go ?
B He passed.
 - 2 A I got the job.
B Well _____!
 - 3 A We lost the football match.
B Better _____ next time.
 - 4 A I won £1,000.
B That's fantastic _____!
 - 5 A We got married last week.
B _____!

Wordlist 9-16

9 do homework (v)	/,du: 'həʊmwɜ:k/
do housework (v)	/,du: 'haʊswɜ:k/
do the ironing (v)	/,du: ði 'aɪrənɪŋ/
get up (v)	/,get 'ʌp/
get home (v)	/,get 'həʊm/
get dressed (v)	/,get 'drest/
go out (v)	/,gəʊ 'aʊt/
go shopping (v)	/,gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/
go to bed (v)	/,gəʊ tə 'bed/
have a rest (v)	/,hæv ə 'rest/
have a shower (v)	/,hæv ə 'ʃaʊə(r)/
have breakfast (v)	/,hæv 'brekfəst/
make a cup of coffee (v)	/,meɪk ə kʌp əv 'kɒfi/
make an appointment (v)	/,meɪk ən ə'pɔɪntmənt/
make the bed (v)	/,meɪk ðə 'bed/

10 bill (n)	/bɪl/
drop (v)	/drɒp/
go wrong (v)	/,gəʊ 'rɒŋ/
hall (n)	/hɔ:l/
hurry (v)	/'hʌri/
in a hurry (exp)	/,ɪn ə 'hʌri/
late (adj)	/leɪt/
meeting (n)	/'mi:tiŋ/
neighbour (n)	/'neɪbə(r)/
on time (exp)	/,ɒn 'taɪm/
pocket (n)	/'pɒkɪt/
post (n)	/pəʊst/
queue (n)	/kju:/

11 argument (n)	/'ɑ:gjʊmənt/
contract (n)	/'kɒntrækt/
deal with (v)	/'di:l wɪð/
earn (v)	/ɜ:n/
estate agent (n)	/'ɪstet ,eɪdʒ(ə)nt/
legal matter (n)	/'li:gl ,məte(r)/
mortgage (n)	/'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ/
move house (v)	/,mu:v 'haʊs/
own (v)	/əʊn/
solicitor (n)	/sə'lisɪtə/
take out (v)	/,teɪk 'aʊt/

12 I heard about that. (exp)	/aɪ 'hɜ:d əbaʊt ,ðæt/
I see what you mean. (exp)	/aɪ ,si: wɒt ju: 'mi:n/
Oh, I see. (exp)	/,əʊ aɪ 'si:/
Oh, right. (exp)	/,əʊ 'raɪt/
That's true. (exp)	/'ðæts ,tru:/
make money (v)	/,meɪk 'mʌni/
lose money (v)	/,lu:z 'mʌni/
save money (v)	/,seɪv 'mʌni/
close down (v)	/,kləʊz 'daʊn/
eat like a horse (exp)	/,i:t lɑ:k ə 'hɔ:s/
look good (exp)	/,lʊk 'ɡʊd/
till (prep)	/tɪl/

13 be born (v)	/bi: 'bɔ:n/
die (v)	/daɪ/
fall in love (v)	/,fɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv/
get a job (v)	/,get ə 'dʒɒb/
get divorced (v)	/,get drɪ'vɔ:st/
get married (v)	/,get 'mærid/
go out with (v)	/,gəʊ 'aʊt wɪð/
graduate (v)	/'grædʒueɪt/
grow up (v)	/,grəʊ 'ʌp/
have children (v)	/,hæv 'tʃɪldrən/
lose a job (v)	/,lu:z ə 'dʒɒb/
meet your future husband/wife (v)	/,mi:t ju:(r) ,fju:tʃə 'hʌzbənd ɔ: 'waɪf/
move house (v)	/,mu:v 'haʊs/
retire (v)	/rɪ'taɪə(r)/
take an exam (v)	/,teɪk ən ɪg'zæm/

14 anyway (adv)	/'eniweɪ/
child (n)	/tʃaɪld/
how (adv)	/haʊ/
go on a date (v)	/,gəʊ ɒn ə 'deɪt/
guy (n)	/gaɪ/
later (adj)	/'leɪtə(r)/
laugh (v)	/lɑ:f/
leave school (v)	/,li:v 'sku:l/
on business (exp)	/,ɒn 'bɪznəs/
subject (n)	/'sʌbdʒɪkt/
tour guide (n)	/'tuə(r) ,ɡaɪd/
wedding (n)	/'wedɪŋ/
well (exp)	/wel/

15 blues (n)	/blu:z/
classical music (n)	/'klæsɪkəl ,mju:zɪk/
country music (n)	/'kʌntri ,mju:zɪk/
gospel (n)	/'ɡɒspl/
jazz (n)	/dʒæz/
soul (n)	/səʊl/
create (v)	/kri'eɪt/
dark (adj)	/dɑ:k/
film director (n)	/'fɪlm dɪ'rektə(r)/
go blind (v)	/,gəʊ 'blaɪnd/
heroin (n)	/'herəʊɪn/
Oscar (n)	/'ɒskə(r)/

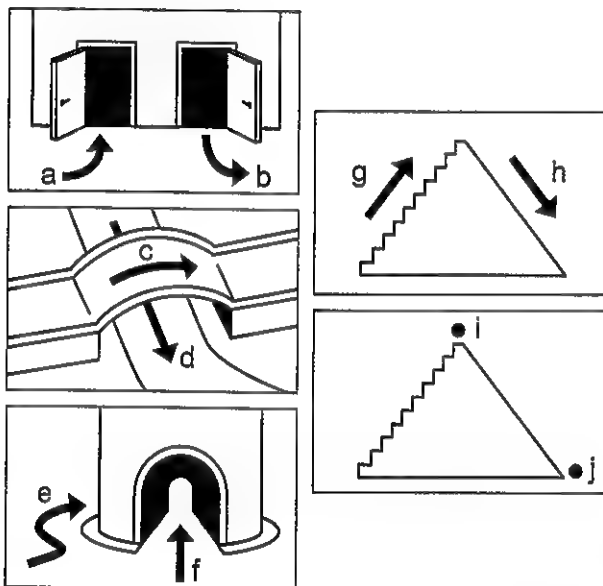
16 Congratulations! (exp)	/kən'grætʃu'leɪʃnz/
That's fantastic news! (exp)	/ðæts fæn'tæstɪk ,nju:z/
Well done! (exp)	/,wel 'dʌn/
I knew you could do it. (exp)	/aɪ 'nju: ju: kəd ,du: ɪt/
Never mind. (exp)	/'nevə ,maɪnd/
Better luck next time. (exp)	/'betə lʌk ,nekst taɪm/
Oh, dear. (exp)	/,əʊ 'dɪə/
That's a pity. (exp)	/'ðæts ə ,pɪti/
How did it go? (exp)	/,haʊ dɪd ɪt 'ɡəʊ/

Review 17-24

Vocabulary

1 Match the pictures with the locations and directions.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 go round <u>e</u> | 6 go out of <u> </u> |
| 2 go down <u> </u> | 7 go through <u> </u> |
| 3 go under <u> </u> | 8 at the top <u> </u> |
| 4 go into <u> </u> | 9 go over <u> </u> |
| 5 go up <u> </u> | 10 at the bottom <u> </u> |



Grammar

2 Choose the correct form.

- We usually *cycle* / *are cycling* to school.
- You *don't work* / *aren't working* on Saturdays.
- Pavel *has* / *'s having* lunch at the moment.
- Do you usually wear* / *Are you usually wearing* jeans?
- It *doesn't snow* / *isn't snowing* today.

3 Complete the sentences. Put the verbs in the past continuous.

write play watch make

- I an email.
- Martin and Erik golf.
- Amelie dinner.
- Alexis and Mo a DVD.

4 Complete the answers.

- Were you making lunch? Yes, I .
- Were Joe and Mel working? Yes, they .
- Was In-sook writing an email? No, she .
- Were Tak Hung and Tony studying? No, they .

Skills

5 Match the sentences with the responses.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 The airport, please. <u>c</u> | a With friends. |
| 2 Are you here on holiday? <u> </u> | b Thank you. |
| 3 Do you like New York? <u> </u> | c Which terminal? |
| 4 Where are you staying? <u> </u> | d Yes, it's very nice. |
| 5 Enjoy your holiday. <u> </u> | e No, on business. |

6 Read the text. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

My name is Javi and I'm from Spain. Last year I was in Wales for a meeting. One evening I was driving back to my hotel and I passed an old pub called The Castle Tavern. I decided to stop and have a drink. I was the only person in the pub. An old woman wearing a black dress served my drink. She said she was the owner of the pub. The next day I told the hotel receptionist about the pub. He looked very surprised. 'That's impossible,' he said. 'The Castle Tavern closed in 1957 when the owner died.'

- Javi is Spanish. *T*
- He was on holiday. *T*
- He was walking back to his hotel. *F*
- The pub was very busy. *F*
- A young woman served him. *F*
- The woman was wearing a black dress. *T*
- The Castle Tavern closed in 1957. *T*
- The owner is still alive. *F*

7 Put the words in the correct order to make expressions.

- you like a Would hand ?
- kind very 's That .
- Can hand give you me a ?
- it No, 's OK .

8 Complete the directions.

end directions traffic lights hand
for along turn about

Here are the ¹*directions* to our office. When you leave the motorway, ² left. Drive ³ the road for ⁴ a kilometre. Look ⁵ a hospital on the right- ⁶ side. Turn left at the next ⁷ . Our offices are at the ⁸ of the street, on the corner.

Wordlist 17-24

- 17** change (v) /tʃeɪndʒ/
 depart from (v) /dɪˈpɑːt ˌfrɑːm/
 direct (adj) /dɪˈrekt/
 express (n) /ɪkˈspres/
 fare (n) /feə(r)/
 first class (adj) /fɜːst ˈklaːs/
 get to (v) /ˈget tu/
 local train (n) /ˈləʊkl ˌtreɪn/
 platform (n) /ˈplætfɔːm/
 return (n) /rɪˈtɜːn/
 seat reservation (n) /ˈsiːt reˈzeɪʃn/
 single (n) /ˈsɪŋɡl/
 standard class (n) /ˈstændəd ˌklaːs/
 station (n) /ˈsteɪʃn/
 train (n) /treɪn/
- 18** cycle (v) /ˈsaɪkl/
 do a crossword (v) /ˌdʊə ə ˈkrɒswɔːd/
 jog (v) /dʒɒɡ/
 play golf (v) /ˌpleɪ ˈɡɒlf/
 read a book (v) /ˌriːd ə ˈbʊk/
 sunbathe (v) /ˈsʌnbæθ/
 swim (v) /swɪm/
 at the moment /ˌæt ðə ˈməʊmənt/
 deliver (v) /dɪˈlɪvə(r)/
 get wet (v) /ˌget ˈwet/
 give someone a lift (v) /ˌɡɪv sʌmwʌn ə ˈlɪft/
 heavy (adj) /ˈhevi/
 nowhere (adv) /ˈnəʊweə(r)/
 stand (v) /stænd/
 wake up (v) /ˌweɪk ˈʌp/
- 19** transport sign (n) /ˈtrænspɔːt ˌsaɪn/
 crossroads (n pl) /ˈkrɒsrəʊdz/
 dead end (n) /ˌded ˈend/
 no entry /ˌnəʊ ˈentri/
 roadworks (n pl) /ˈrəʊdwɜːks/
 sharp bend (n) /ˌʃɑːp ˈbend/
 steep hill (n) /ˌstiːp ˈhɪl/
- 20** give someone a hand (with ...)? (exp) /ˌɡɪv sʌmwʌn ə ˈhænd wɪθ/
 It's OK. (exp) /ɪts ˌəʊˈkeɪ/
 Sure (exp). /ʃʊː/
 That's very kind. (exp) /ˌðæt s ˌveri ˈkaɪnd/
 by the way (exp) /ˌbaɪ ðə ˈweɪ/
 just a minute (exp) /ˌdʒʌst ə ˈmɪnɪt/
 show someone around (v) /ˌʃəʊ sʌmwʌn əˈraʊnd/

- 21** along the street (exp) /əˌlɒŋ ðə ˈstriːt/
 at the bottom of the hill (exp) /æt ðə ˌbɒtəm əv ðə ˈhɪl/
 at the end of the road (exp) /æt ði ˌend əv ðə ˈrəʊd/
 at the top of the hill (exp) /æt ðə ˌtɒp əv ðə ˈhɪl/
 down the hill (exp) /ˌdaʊn ðə ˈhɪl/
 in the middle of the square (exp) /ɪn ðə ˌmɪdl əv ðə ˈskweə/
 into the car park (exp) /ɪntə ðə ˈkɑː ˌpɑːk/
 on the corner of the street (exp) /ɒn ðə ˌkɔːnə(r) əv ðə ˈstriːt/
 out of the car park (exp) /ˌaʊt əv ðə ˈkɑː ˌpɑːk/
 over the bridge (exp) /ˌəʊvə(r) ðə ˈbrɪdʒ/
 past the shop (exp) /ˌpɑːst ðə ˈʃɒp/
 round the park (exp) /ˌraʊnd ðə ˈpɑːk/
 turn left (exp) /tɜːn ˈleft/
 turn right (exp) /tɜːn ˈraɪt/
 through the park (exp) /ˌθruː ðə ˈpɑːk/
 under the bridge (exp) /ˌʌndə(r) ðə ˈbrɪdʒ/
 up the hill (exp) /ˌʌp ðə ˈhɪl/
- 22** cash machine (n) /ˈkæʃ məˌʃɪn/
 Excuse me. (exp) /ɪkˈskjuːz mi/
 shop window (n) /ˌʃɒp ˈwɪndəʊ/
 sweatshirt (n) /ˈswetʃɜːt/
 wait for (v) /ˈweɪt fɔː/
 while (conj) /waɪl/
- 23** corridor (n) /ˈkɒrɪdɔː/
 dig (v) /dɪɡ/
 have a rest (v) /ˌhæv ə ˈrest/
 impossible (adj) /ɪmˈpɒsəbl/
 knock (v) /nɒk/
 point to (v) /ˌpɔɪnt tu/
 restaurant (n) /ˈrestrɒnt/
 stay at (v) /ˌsteɪ ˌæt/
 waiter (n) /ˈweɪtə(r)/
- 24** junction (n) /ˌdʒʌŋkʃn/
 roundabout (n) /ˈraʊndəbaʊt/
 traffic lights (n pl) /ˈtræfɪk ˌlaɪts/
 shopping centre (n) /ˌʃɒpɪŋ ˌsentə(r)/
 on the left-hand side (exp) /ɒn ðə ˌleft hænd ˈsaɪd/
 on the right-hand side (exp) /ɒn ðə ˌraɪt hænd ˈsaɪd/
 After about ... (exp) /ˌɑːftə(r) əbaʊt/
 how to get there (exp) /haʊ tə ˈget ˌðeə/
 Go along ... (v) (exp) /ˌɡəʊ əˈlɒŋ/
 Look for ... (v) (exp) /lʊk fɔː(r)/
 Take the second turning on the left. (exp) /teɪk ðə ˈsekənd ˌtɜːnɪŋ ɒn ðə ˈleft/
 go straight on (exp) /ˌɡəʊ streɪt ˈɒn/
 speed limit /ˈspiːd ˌlɪmɪt/
 Interstate Highway (n) /ˈɪntəsteɪt ˌhaɪweɪ/
 mile (n) /maɪl/
 motorway (n) /ˈməʊtəweɪ/

Review 25-32

Vocabulary

1 Name six places. Use the words.

sea desert ocean islands lake river
The Mediterranean Sea

2 Look at the pictures. Complete the text with the correct words.



Mary Jones is in her ¹twenties/sixties. She is ²short/tall and fairly ³slim/overweight. She has ⁴medium-length/short dark hair. Her brother James is ⁵young/middle-aged. He is very ⁶short/tall. He has very ⁷dark/fair hair. He's got a ⁸moustache/beard.

Grammar

3 Make sentences with the correct form of going to.

- 1 Manos is going to meet his girlfriend. (meet)
- 2 _____ Hajer and Naila _____ dinner? (make)
- 3 I _____ TV tonight. (not/watch)
- 4 _____ you _____ your sister? (phone)
- 5 _____ Rosanna _____ tomorrow? (study)
- 6 The match _____ at three o'clock. (start)
- 7 We _____ to the party. (not/go)

4 Write the adverbs.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------|
| 1 easy <u>easily</u> | 4 quick |
| 2 good | 5 fast |
| 3 bad | 6 careful |

5 Tick ✓ or correct the sentences.

- 1 He doesn't sing very good. well
- 2 The meal was excellent.
- 3 They play badly football.
- 4 India sounds beautifully.
- 5 She's a terribly teacher.
- 6 This is an easily exercise.
- 7 The wine tastes awful.

Skills

6 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week John bought an old boat. He's going to repair it and paint it red. In June he's going to leave England and sail to Greece. It's going to take two months to get to Greece. On the way, he's going to visit France, Spain, Morocco, and Italy. He isn't going to go alone. His wife is going to stay in England, but John's going to take his cat, Errol.

- 1 What did John buy last week?
- 2 Who is going to repair and paint the boat?
- 3 When is John going to arrive in Greece?
- 4 How many countries is John going to visit?
- 5 Is John's wife going to go with him?
- 6 Who is Errol?

7 Match the sentences with the responses.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 Do you like swimming? — | |
| 2 Which shirt do you like? — | |
| 3 I love shopping. — | |
| 4 Sara doesn't like cooking. — | |
| a I prefer the blue one. | c No, I hate it. |
| b Really? I don't mind it. | d Do you? I can't stand it. |

8 Write the opposites.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 selfish | 3 quiet |
| 2 hard-working | 4 confident |

9 Complete the conversations.

know maybe sure probably

- 1 A Is Milo going to quit his job?
B Yes, _____.
- 2 A Are you going to go to the party?
B _____.
- 3 A When does your course start?
B We don't _____ yet.
- 4 A Where is Emily?
B I'm not _____.

10 Put the words in the correct order to make shopping expressions.

- 1 Can I help you?
- 1 help I Can you ?
- 2 this pen How is much ?
- 3 I take 'll it .
- 4 you see Would the one other like to ?
- 5 that Can have I one ?

Wordlist 25-32

25 Africa (n)	/ˈæfrɪkə/
Antarctica (n)	/ænˈtɑːktɪkə/
Asia (n)	/ˈeɪʒə/
Europe (n)	/ˈjʊərəp/
Lake Victoria (n)	/ˌleɪk vɪkˈtɔːrɪə/
Mount Everest (n)	/ˌmaʊnt ˈevərɪst/
North America (n)	/ˌnɔːθ əˈmerɪkə/
Oceania (n)	/ˌəʊʃiˈɑːniə/
South America (n)	/ˌsaʊθ əˈmerɪkə/
The Amazon (n)	/ði ˈæməzən/
The Arctic Ocean (n)	/ði ˌɑːktɪk ˈəʊʃn/
The Atlantic Ocean (n)	/ði ətˌlæntɪk ˈəʊʃn/
The Canary Islands (n)	/ðə kəˈneəri ˌaɪləndz/
The Indian Ocean (n)	/ðə ˌɪndiən ˈəʊʃn/
The Mediterranean Sea (n)	/ðə ˌmedɪtəˈreɪniən ˈsiː/
The Pacific Ocean (n)	/ðə pəˈsɪfɪk ˈəʊʃn/
The Rockies (n)	/ðə ˈrɒkɪz/
The Sahara Desert (n)	/ðə səˈhɑːrə ˈdezət/
The South Pole (n)	/ðə ˌsaʊθ ˈpəʊl/

26 advert (n)	/ˈædvɜːt/
exactly (adv)	/ɪɡˈzæktli/
have an early night (v)	/hæv ˌən ˈɜːli ˈnaɪt/
I can't believe it. (exp)	/aɪ ˌkɑːnt brɪˈliːv ɪt/
robot (n)	/ˈrəʊbɒt/
the news (n)	/ðə ˈnjuːz/

27 east (n)	/iːst/
north (n)	/nɔːθ/
south (n)	/saʊθ/
west (n)	/west/
all over	/ɔːl ˈəʊvə(r)/
boat (n)	/bəʊt/
break a record (v)	/ˌbreɪk ə ˈrekɔːd/
continent (n)	/ˈkɒntɪnənt/
European (adj)	/ˌjʊərəˈpiːən/
marathon (n)	/ˈmærəθən/
race (n)	/reɪs/
rally (n)	/ræli/
River Thames (n)	/ˌrɪvə(r) ˈtemz/
speedboat (n)	/ˈspiːdbəʊt/
take (v)	/teɪk/
take part in (v)	/teɪk ˈpɑːt ɪn/
unusual (adj)	/ʌnˈjuːʒuəl/
vintage car (n)	/ˌvɪntɪdʒ ˈkɑː(r)/
Wales (n)	/weɪlz/
yacht (n)	/jɒt/

28 Maybe. (exp)	/ˈmeɪbi/
We aren't sure. (exp)	/wi ˌaɪnt ˈʃʊə/
We don't know yet. (exp)	/wi ˌdəʊnt ˈnəʊ ˌjet/
Yes, probably. (exp)	/ˌjes ˈprɒbəbli/

29 build (n)	/bɪld/
medium build (adj)	/ˌmɪdiəm ˈbɪld/
medium height (adj)	/ˌmɪdiəm ˈhaɪt/
overweight (adj)	/ˌəʊvəˈweɪt/
short (adj)	/ʃɔːt/
slim (adj)	/slɪm/
tall (adj)	/tɔːl/
general appearance (n)	/ˌdʒenrəl əˈprɪərəns/
attractive (adj)	/əˈtræktɪv/
good-looking (adj)	/ˌɡʊdˈlʊkɪŋ/
handsome (adj)	/ˈhænsəm/
pretty (adj)	/ˈprɪti/
age (n)	/eɪdʒ/
in his/her seventies (exp)	/ɪn hɪz /hə ˈsevnɪtɪz/
middle-aged (adj)	/ˌmɪdl ˈeɪdʒd/
young (adj)	/jʌŋ/
hair (n)	/heə(r)/
bald (adj)	/bɔːld/
beard (n)	/bɪəd/
blonde (adj)	/blɒnd/
brown (adj)	/braʊn/
curly (adj)	/ˈkɜːli/
dark (adj)	/dɑːk/
fair (adj)	/feə(r)/
medium length (adj)	/ˌmɪdiəm ˈleŋθ/
moustache (n)	/məˈsteɪʃ/
long (adj)	/lɒŋ/
straight (adj)	/streɪt/
wavy (adj)	/ˈweɪvi/

30 badly (adv)	/ˈbædli/
delicious (adj)	/dɪˈlɪʃəs/
excellent (adj)	/ˈeksələnt/
perfect (adj)	/ˈpɜːfekt/
perfectly (adv)	/ˈpɜːfektli/
terrible (adj)	/ˈterəbl/
well (adj)	/wel/

31 I can't stand ... (exp)	/aɪ ˌkɑːnt ˈstænd/
I don't mind ... (exp)	/aɪ ˌdəʊnt ˈmaɪnd/
confident (adj)	/ˈkɒnfɪd(ə)nt/
generous (adj)	/ˌdʒenərəs/
hard-working (adj)	/ˌhɑːdˈwɜːkɪŋ/
lazy (adj)	/ˈleɪzi/
quiet (adj)	/ˈkwaɪət/
noisy (adj)	/ˈnɔɪzi/
selfish (adj)	/ˈselfɪʃ/
shy (adj)	/ʃaɪ/

32 have a look at (v)	/ˌhæv ə ˈlʊk ət/
Can I help you? (exp)	/kən aɪ ˈhelp juː/
How much are those ... ? (exp)	/haʊ mʌtʃ ə ˈðəʊz/
I think I prefer ... (exp)	/aɪ ˈθɪŋk aɪ prɪˈfɜː(r)/
I'll take it. (exp)	/aɪ ˈteɪk ɪt/

Review 33-40

Vocabulary

1 Write six kinds of TV programme.

a documentary,

2 Complete the conversations.

headache sick painful temperature
burnt flu rash bleeding

- 1 A What's her temperature?
B It's quite high, 39°C.
- 2 A My back itches.
B Yes, you've got a _____.
- 3 A My finger's _____.
B Don't worry. I've got some plasters.
- 4 A What's the matter?
B I feel _____.
- 5 A I've got a _____.
B Here, I've got some painkillers.
- 6 A I've got _____.
B Oh, dear. Stay in bed then.
- 7 A My knee is swollen.
B Is it very _____?
- 8 A I've _____ my finger.
B Put it under some cold water.

Grammar

3 Make questions and sentences with the present perfect. Use the cues.

- 1 Have you ever been to Tunisia?
- 1 you/ever/go/to Tunisia?
- 2 He/never/fail/an exam.
- 3 they/ever/visit/Madrid?
- 4 We/never/win/anything.
- 5 she/ever/be/on TV?

4 Choose the correct form.

- 1 A What's Sam's phone number?
B Er, I've *forgotten* / *forgot*.
- 2 A When *have you seen* / *did you see* Toni?
B Last Saturday.
- 3 A Can you play golf on Tuesday?
B No, sorry. I've *broken* / *broke* my thumb.
- 4 A Where's Hannah?
B She's *gone* / *went* to a meeting.
- 5 A Oh, no! We've *missed* / *missed* the bus.
B There's another one in five minutes.
- 6 A Is Fred here?
B No. He's *gone* / *went* at 3.30.

Skills

5 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Thieves have stolen €100 million from Best Bank.
The money *is/isn't* in the bank now.
- 2 The new Olympic stadium has opened. You *can/can't* use the stadium now.
- 3 The US president has arrived in Beijing. The president is in *Beijing/the US* now.
- 4 A fire has destroyed ten houses in Birmingham.
People *can/can't* live in the houses now.

6 Complete the advice to travellers.

water legs and feet hand luggage
comfortable toiletry items vaccinations

- 1 See your doctor for your vaccinations.
- 2 Don't forget to pack your _____, such as toothpaste and a hairbrush.
- 3 Drink lots of _____ to avoid dehydration.
- 4 When you are sitting down, move your _____.
- 5 Wear _____ clothes.
- 6 Put your money in your _____.



7 Match the halves of the expressions.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 What seems to _____ | a hurt? |
| 2 When did _____ | b at your chest? |
| 3 Can I have a look _____ | c check it. |
| 4 Where does it _____ | d be the problem? |
| 5 We'd better _____ | e the pain start? |

Wordlist 33-40

33 TV programme (n)	/ˈtiː ˈviː ˌprəʊɡræm/
cartoon (n)	/kɑːˈtuːn/
chat show (n)	/ˈtʃæt ˌʃəʊ/
documentary (n)	/ˌdɒkjʊˈmentri/
film (n)	/fɪlm/
game show (n)	/ˈɡeɪm ˌʃəʊ/
hospital drama (n)	/ˈhɒspɪtl ˌdrɑːmə/
movie (n)	/ˈmuːvi/
music programme (n)	/ˈmjuːzɪk ˌprəʊɡræm/
police drama (n)	/pəˈliːs ˌdrɑːmə/
reality TV show (n)	/riˌæləti tiː ˈviː ˌʃəʊ/
sitcom (n)	/ˈsɪtkɒm/
soap opera (n)	/ˈsəʊp ˌɒprə/
sports programme (n)	/ˈspɔːts ˌprəʊɡræm/
the news (n)	/ðə ˈnjuːz/
TV advert (n)	/ˈtiː ˈviː ˌædvɜːt/
weather forecast (n)	/ˈweðə(r) ˌfɔːkəst/
channel (n)	/ˈtʃænl/
commercial (adj)	/kəˈmɜːʃl/
licence fee (n)	/ˈlaɪsəns ˌfiː/
newsreader (n)	/ˈnjuːz ˌriːdɜ(r)/
satellite TV (n)	/ˌsætəlart ˈtiː ˈviː/
subscription (n)	/səbˈskɪpʃn/

34 lottery (n)	/ˈlɒtəri/
lucky (adj)	/ˈlʌki/
millions of pounds (exp)	/ˌmɪljənz əv ˈpaʊndz/
miss a plane (v)	/ˌmɪs ə ˈpleɪn/
prize (n)	/praɪz/
ride a horse (v)	/ˌraɪd ə ˈhɔːs/
save someone's life (v)	/ˌseɪv sʌmwʌnz ˈlaɪf/
ticket	/ˈtɪkɪt/
unlucky (adj)	/ʌnˈlʌki/
wow (exp)	/waʊ/
win (v)	/wɪn/

35 accident (n)	/ˈæksɪd(ə)nt/
award (n)	/əˈwɔːd/
coast (n)	/kəʊst/
crash into (v)	/ˌkræʃ ˈɪntu/
destroy (v)	/dɪˈstrɔɪ/
diamond (n)	/ˈdaɪəmənd/
head of government (n)	/ˌhed əv ˈɡʌvənmənt/
headline (n)	/ˈhedlaɪn/
hit (v)	/hɪt/
kill (v)	/kɪl/
latest (adj)	/ˈleɪtɪst/
prime minister (n)	/ˌpraɪm ˈmɪnɪstə(r)/
thief (n)	/θiːf/
tropical storm (n)	/ˌtrɒpɪkl ˈstɔːm/

36 I believe ... (exp)	/aɪ brɪˈliːv/
I think ... (exp)	/aɪ ˈθɪŋk/
No, I don't think so. (exp)	/ˈnəʊ aɪ dəʊnt ˈθɪŋk səʊ/
Yes, I think so. (exp)	/ˈjes aɪ ˈθɪŋk səʊ/

37 health problem (n)	/ˈhelθ ˌprɒbləm/
I've bruised my leg. (exp)	/aɪv ˌbruːzd maɪ ˈleg/
I've burnt my hand. (exp)	/aɪv ˌbɜːnt maɪ ˈhænd/
I've cut my finger. (exp)	/aɪv ˌkʌt maɪ ˈfɪŋɡə(r)/
I feel sick. (exp)	/aɪ fiːl ˈsɪk/
I've got a cold. (exp)	/aɪv ˌɡɒt ə ˈkəʊld/
I've got a rash. (exp)	/aɪv ˌɡɒt ə ˈræʃ/
I've got a temperature. (exp)	/aɪv ˌɡɒt ə ˈtempərɪtʃə/
I've got an infection. (exp)	/aɪv ˌɡɒt ən ɪnˈfekʃn/
I've got flu. (exp)	/aɪv ˌɡɒt ˈfluː/
I've hurt my knee. (exp)	/aɪv ˌhɜːt maɪ ˈniː/
I've sprained my ankle. (exp)	/aɪv ˌspreɪnd maɪ ˈæŋkl/
My arm itches. (exp)	/maɪ ˈɑːm ɪtʃɪz/
My thumb's painful. (exp)	/maɪ ˈθʌmz ˌpeɪnfl/
My nose is bleeding. (exp)	/maɪ ˈnəʊz ɪz ˌbliːdɪŋ/
My elbow's swollen. (exp)	/maɪ ˈelbəʊz ˌswəʊlən/

38 bone (n)	/bəʊn/
break (v)	/breɪk/
downstairs (adv)	/ˌdaʊnˈsteəz/
drop (v)	/drɒp/
fall (v)	/fɔːl/
fall off (v)	/fɔːl ˈɒf/
happen (v)	/ˈhæpən/
hurt (v)	/hɜːt/

39 avoid (v)	/əˈvɔɪd/
charger (n)	/ˈtʃɑːdʒə(r)/
dehydration (n)	/ˌdiːhaɪˈdreɪʃn/
hairbrush (n)	/ˈheəbrʌʃ/
insect bite (n)	/ˌɪnsekt ˌbaɪt/
jewellery (n)	/ˈdʒuːəlri/
knife (n)	/naɪf/
luggage (n)	/ˈlʌɡɪdʒ/
medical item (n)	/ˈmedɪkl ˌaɪtəm/
medicine (n)	/ˈmedsn/
mobile phone (n)	/ˌməʊbaɪl ˈfəʊn/
painkiller (n)	/ˌpeɪnkɪlə(r)/
plaster (n)	/ˈplɑːstə(r)/
scissors (n pl)	/ˈsɪzəz/
suitcase (n)	/ˈsuːtkes/
sunscreen (n)	/ˈsʌnskriːn/
tablet (n)	/ˈtæblət/
toiletty item (n)	/ˌtɔɪlətri ˌaɪtəm/
toothbrush (n)	/ˈtuːθbrʌʃ/
toothpaste (n)	/ˈtuːθpeɪst/
vaccination (n)	/ˌvæksɪˈneɪʃn/
valid (adj)	/ˈvælɪd/

40 have a look at (v)	/hæv ə ˈlʊk æt/
In the meantime ... (exp)	/ɪn ðə ˈmiːntaɪm/
We'd better check your ... (exp)	/wiːd ˈbetə(r) tʃek ʒɔː(r)/
What seems to be the problem? (exp)	/wɒt ˌsiːmz tə biː ðə ˈprɒbləm/

Review 41-48

1 Choose the correct word.

- 1 peel *potatoes / chips*
- 2 roast *a chicken / an omelette*
- 3 grill / boil *an egg*
- 4 pour / slice *water*
- 5 put food on a *bowl / plate*
- 6 a *mixed / stirred* salad

2a Match the items with the shops.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1 chicken <u>c</u> | a a stationery shop |
| 2 painkillers — | b a newsagent's |
| 3 onions — | c a butcher's |
| 4 magazines — | d a chemist's |
| 5 paper and pens — | e a greengrocer's |

b Write four more shops. Say one thing you can buy in each shop.

Grammar

3 Complete the recipe.

a slices grams four little
some many few an much

For Scrambled Eggs on Toast you need:

two ¹ slices of bread, ² _____ large eggs, 100
³ _____ of butter.

Toast the bread and put it on ⁴ _____ plate.

Mix the eggs in a bowl with a ⁵ _____ milk. Add

⁶ _____ salt. Put the butter in a saucepan and pour
the eggs and milk into the pan. Cook the eggs for a
⁷ _____ minutes. Serve on the toast.

This is ⁸ _____ easy recipe, it doesn't take ⁹ _____
time and you don't need ¹⁰ _____ things.

4 Write the comparative and superlative forms.

nice big noisy popular good bad
nicer, the nicest

5 Complete the sentences. Use the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in brackets.

- 1 Spain is smaller than China. (small)
- 2 My car is _____ car in the world. (slow)
- 3 Maths is _____ Geography. (bad)
- 4 This is _____ room in the house. (big)
- 5 Her laptop was _____ Tom's. (cheap)
- 6 Reading was _____ thing in Chinese. (difficult)
- 7 Heidi is _____ Hans. (friendly)
- 8 The Riviera is _____ restaurant in town. (expensive)

Skills

6 Read the text. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?



Last year Sally heard about the Tomato Soup Diet. Every day you have four bowls of soup and three litres of water. It sounded boring but it was a fast way to lose weight. On the first day she

bought some tomatoes at the market and made lots of soup. It was delicious, and she lost three kilos in five days. On the sixth day she felt sick and she didn't have much energy so she decided to stop the diet and have a big plate of steak and chips.

- 1 The soup was made of meat.
- 2 She bought the soup at the market.
- 3 She liked the soup.
- 4 She lost three kilos on the diet.
- 5 She was on the diet for seven days.
- 6 She had lots of energy.

7 Answer the questions.

- 1 What shops are there near your house?
- 2 Do you go to a market? What do you buy there?
- 3 Where do you do most of your food shopping? Why?

8 Complete the expressions.

serious believe not for

- 1 Oh, _____ goodness sake!
- 2 You can't be _____!
- 3 Oh no, _____ again!
- 4 Oh, I don't _____ it!

9 Match the questions with the responses.

- 1 Is that any good? c
- 2 What size is that? _____
- 3 Can I try this on, please? _____
- 4 It's too tight. _____
- 5 Anything else? _____
- a Yes, the changing rooms are over there.
- b No, thanks.
- c Yes. This one's fine.
- d Extra large.
- e This one is a bigger size.

Wordlist 41-48

- 41** bowl (n) /bəʊl/
 frying pan (n) /'fraɪŋ ,pæn/
 plate (n) /pleɪt/
 saucepan (n) /'sɔ:spən/
 bake (v) /beɪk/
 boil (v) /boɪl/
 fry (v) /fraɪ/
 grill (v) /grɪl/
 roast (v) /rəʊst/
 add (v) /æd/
 mix (v) /mɪks/
 peel (v) /pi:l/
 pour (v) /pɔ:(r)/
 slice (v) /slaɪs/
 stir (v) /stɜ:(r)/
 weigh (v) /weɪ/
- 42** fruit (n) /fru:t/
 milk (n) /mɪlk/
 raspberry (n) /'rɑ:zbəri/
 strawberry (n) /'strɔ:bəri/
 sugar (n) /'ʃʊɡə(r)/
 water (n) /'wɔ:tə(r)/
 wine (n) /waɪn/
 fork (n) /fɔ:k/
 knife (n) /naɪf/
 spoon (n) /spu:n/
 any (det) /'eni/
 bottle (n) /'bɒtl/
 a few (det) /ə 'fju:/
 gram (n) /græm/
 kilo (n) /'ki:ləʊ/
 a little (det) /ə 'lɪtl/
 many (det) /'meni/
 much (det) /mʌtʃ/
 piece (n) /pi:s/
 slice (n) /slaɪs/
 some (det) /səm/
- 43** but /bʌt/
 however /haʊ'evə(r)/
 a couple (n) /ə 'kʌpl/
 lots (n) /lɒts/
 basic rule (n) /,beɪsɪk 'ru:l/
 diet (n) /'daɪət/
 energy (n) /'enədʒi/
 full (adj) /fʊl/
 lose weight (v) /,lu:z 'weɪt/
 read about (v) /'ri:d ə,baut/
- 44** Oh no, not again! (exp) /əʊ ,nəʊ nɒt ə'gen/
 Oh, for goodness sake! (exp) /əʊ fə ,ɡʊdnəs 'seɪk/
 Oh, I don't believe it! (exp) /əʊ aɪ ,dəʊnt br'i:lɪv ɪt/
 You can't be serious! (exp) /ju: ,kɑ:nt bi 'sɪəriəs/
 You must be joking! (exp) /ju: ,mʌst bi 'dʒəʊkɪŋ/
- 45** baker's (n) /'beɪkəz/
 butcher's (n) /'bʊtʃəz/
 chemist's (n) /'kemɪsts/
 department store (n) /drɪ'pɑ:tmənt ,stɔ:(r)/
 estate agent's (n) /ɪ'steɪt ,eɪdʒənts/
 flower shop (n) /'flaʊə ,ʃɒp/
 furniture shop (n) /'fɜ:nɪtʃə ,ʃɒp/
 greengrocer's (n) /'grɪŋɡrəʊsəz/
 hairdresser's (n) /'heədresəz/
 hardware shop (n) /'ha:dweə ,ʃɒp/
 jewellery shop (n) /'dʒu:əlri ,ʃɒp/
 music shop (n) /'mju:zɪk ,ʃɒp/
 newsagent's (n) /'nju:zeɪdʒənts/
 sports shop (n) /'spɔ:ts ,ʃɒp/
 stationery shop (n) /'steɪʃnri ,ʃɒp/
 travel agent's (n) /'trævl ,eɪdʒənts/
- 46** best (adj) /best/
 better (adj) /'betə(r)/
 busy (adj) /'bɪzi/
 far (adj) /'fɑ:(r)/
 friendly (adj) /'frendli/
 popular (adj) /'pɒpjələ(r)/
 safe (adj) /'seɪf/
 tidy (adj) /'taɪdi/
 worse /wɜ:s/
 worst /wɜ:st/
- 47** convenient (adj) /kən'veniənt/
 fresher (adj) /'freʃə(r)/
 home delivery (n) /,həʊm drɪ'lɪvəri/
 on the other hand (exp) /ɒn ði 'ʌðə(r) hænd/
 personal (adj) /'pɜ:sənəl/
 shopping centre (n) /'ʃɒpɪŋ ,sentə(r)/
 street market (n) /'stri:t ,mɑ:kɪt/
- 48** changing room (exp) /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ,ru:m/
 How is it? (exp) /haʊ 'ɪz ɪt/
 Is that any good? (exp) /ɪz ,ðæt eni 'ɡʊd/
 size (n) /saɪz/
 try on (v) /traɪ 'ɒn/
 Buy now pay later (exp) /baɪ ,naʊ peɪ 'leɪtə(r)/
 Buy one get one free (exp) /'baɪ wʌn ,get wʌn 'fri:/
 Closing down sale (n) /,kləʊzɪŋ daʊn 'seɪl/
 Everything must go (exp) /,evrɪθɪŋ mʌst 'ɡəʊ/
 sale 50 % off /seɪl 'fɪfti pə,sent 'ɒf/
 special offer (n) /,speʃl 'ɒfə(r)/
 Two for the price /tu: fə ðə praɪs əv 'wʌn/
 of one (exp) /ɪ'nʌf/
 enough (adv) /ɪ'nʌf/
 extra large (adj) /,ekstrə 'lɑ:dʒ/
 loose (adj) /lu:s/
 medium (adj) /'mi:diəm/
 tight (adj) /taɪt/
 too (adv) /tu:/

Review 49–56

Vocabulary

1 Put the words in the correct column.

spend	PIN number	coins	pay
borrow	foreign currency	cheque	lend
notes	bank account		

Verbs	Bank	Cash
spend		

2 Complete the sentences. Use verbs from exercise 1.

- How much money do you _____ on clothes?
- Do you want me to _____ you some money?
- Can I _____ €10? I haven't got any money.
- We usually _____ by cheque.

3 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1 I'd like to try water <u>a</u> | a diving? |
| 2 Davide loves collecting <u>b</u> | b DIY. |
| 3 I don't mind doing <u>c</u> | c the Internet? |
| 4 They haven't tried mountain <u>d</u> | d skiing. |
| 5 Do you like surfing <u>e</u> | e climbing. |
| 6 Has she tried scuba <u>f</u> | f things. |

Grammar

4 Complete the text. Use the verbs in brackets.

In five years' time I ¹ will be (be) rich. I ² _____ (not / live) in Ireland. I ³ _____ (move) to Brazil. I ⁴ _____ (buy) a house and I ⁵ _____ (learn) Portuguese, but I ⁶ _____ (not/find) a job. I ⁷ _____ (relax) all day and I ⁸ _____ (go) clubbing at night. I ⁹ _____ (not/be) married and I ¹⁰ _____ (not/have) any children.

5 Make sentences about your life in five years' time.

- What kind of job will you have? *I'll be a doctor.*
- Where will you be?
- Will you have a house or an apartment?
- Will you be married or single?
- How many children will you have?

6 Make sentences with the first conditional. Use the cues.

- You won't get wet if you take an umbrella.*
- You / not / get wet / if / you / take / an umbrella.
- He / buy / a car / if / he / pass / his driving test.
- If / they / leave / now / they / not / miss / the train.
- If / the weather / be / horrible / we / not / go out.
- I / get / some coffee / if / I / go out.
- If / I / see Jan / I / tell / him / about the meeting.

Skills

7 Read the text. Choose the correct answers.



If you like food, you'll love this holiday in Vietnam. You'll start in Hanoi and spend three nights at the Hotel Annam. We'll take you to the market, where you'll learn how to choose the best food, then our chef will show you how to

prepare typical Vietnamese food. After that, you'll leave the north of Vietnam and fly south to Ho Chi Minh City. You'll have four days there and learn to cook 'bo bay mon', a seven-part beef dinner. When you aren't in the kitchen, there will be visits to some of Vietnam's ancient temples and monuments.

- The main activity is *shopping / cooking*.
- The Hotel Annam is in *Hanoi / Ho Chi Minh City*.
- You'll visit *two / three* places.
- Ho Chi Minh City is in the *north / south* of Vietnam.
- 'Bo bay mon' is a kind of *food / monument*.
- You can *sunbathe / go sightseeing*.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make expressions.

- It's losing money.*
- losing 's money It .
- isn't good Business very .
- bad a It price isn't .
- can't We it afford .
- will How that cost much ?

9 Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.

- 2 How many nights is that for?
- And how many guests will there be?
- 1 I'd like to make a reservation for 11 May, please.
- Four-nights.
- Fine. The price will be €100.
- Does that include breakfast?
- One – me. And I'd like a sea view, please.
- Yes, it does.

Wordlist 49–56

49 bank (n)	/bəŋk/
bank account (n)	/'bəŋk ə,kaʊnt/
cheque (n)	/tʃek/
credit card (n)	/'kredit ,kɑ:d/
PIN number (n)	/'pɪn ,nʌmbə(r)/
salary (n)	/'sæləri/
cash (n)	/kæʃ/
change (n)	/tʃeɪndʒ/
coin (n)	/kɔɪn/
foreign currency (n)	/'fɒrən 'kærənsi/
note (n)	/nəʊt/
receipt (n)	/'ri:si:t/
borrow (v)	/'bɒrəʊ/
exchange (v)	/'eks'tʃeɪndʒ/
lend (v)	/lend/
pay (n)	/peɪ/
save (v)	/serv/
spend (v)	/spend/
abroad (adj)	/ə'brɔ:d/
electronically (adv)	/ɪ,lek'trɒnɪkli/
enter (v)	/'entə(r)/
cash machine (n)	/'kæʃ mə'ʃi:n/
insert (v)	/ɪn'sɜ:t/
remove (v)	/'ri'mu:v/
50 computer chip (n)	/kəm'pjʊtə(r) ,tʃɪp/
email (v)	/'i:meɪl/
future (n)	/'fju:tʃə(r)/
prediction (n)	/'prɪ'dɪkʃn/
text (n)	/tekst/
work from home (v)	/'wɜ:k frəm 'həʊm/
51 actually (adv)	/'æktʃuəli/
appear (v)	/ə'piə(r)/
book a holiday (v)	/'bʊk ə 'hɒlədeɪ/
diesel (n)	/'di:zl/
disease (n)	/'di:zi:z/
electricity (n)	/ɪ,lek'trɪsəti/
global warming (n)	/'gləʊbl 'wɔ:mɪŋ/
hydrogen (n)	/'haɪdrədʒən/
keyboard (n)	/'ki:bɔ:d/
population (n)	/'pɒpjʊ'leɪʃn/
powerful (adj)	/'paʊəfl/
space (n)	/speɪs/
transport (n)	/'træns'pɔ:t/
war (n)	/'wɔ:(r)/
52 afford (v)	/ə'fɔ:d/
broke (adj)	/'brəʊk/
Business isn't very good. (exp)	/'bɪznəs ɪznt veri ,gʊd/
cost (v)	/kɒst/
lose money (exp)	/'lu:z 'mʌni/
not a bad price (exp)	/'nɒt ə bəd 'praɪs/

53 canoeing	/kə'nu:ɪŋ/
clubbing	/'klʌbɪŋ/
collecting things	/kə'lektɪŋ ,θɪŋz/
doing DIY	/'du:ɪŋ di: aɪ 'waɪ/
going out with	/'gəʊɪŋ 'aʊt wɪð/
going to the gym	/'gəʊɪŋ tə ðə 'dʒɪm/
mountain-climbing	/'maʊntən ,klaɪmɪŋ/
painting	/'peɪntɪŋ/
relaxing	/'rɪ'læksɪŋ/
sailing	/'seɪlɪŋ/
scuba-diving	/'sku:bə ,daɪvɪŋ/
sightseeing	/'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/
surfing the Internet	/'sɜ:fɪŋ ðɪ 'ɪntənət/
sunbathing	/'sʌnbəɪðɪŋ/
water-skiing	/'wɔ:təskiɪŋ/
54 autumn (n)	/'ɔ:təm/
spring (n)	/'sprɪŋ/
winter (n)	/'wɪntə(r)/
cherry blossom (n)	/'tʃeri ,blɒsəm/
crowded (n)	/'kraʊdɪd/
Japan (n)	/'dʒə'pæn/
lunch break (n)	/'lʌntʃ breɪk/
postcard (n)	/'pəʊstka:d/
stay in (v)	/steɪ 'ɪn/
visa (n)	/'vɪzə/
55 ancient monument (n)	/'eɪnfənt 'mɒnjumənt/
by the sea (exp)	/'baɪ ðə 'si:/
coral reef (n)	/'kɒrəl 'ri:f/
explore (v)	/'ɪk'splɔ:(r)/
extra (adj)	/'ekstrə/
five-star (adj)	/'faɪv sta:(r)/
have a massage (v)	/'hæv ə 'mæsɑ:ʒ/
holiday guide (n)	/'hɒlədeɪ gaɪd/
rainforest (n)	/'reɪnfɒrɪst/
resort (n)	/'rɪ'zɔ:t/
swimming pool (n)	/'swɪmɪŋ pu:l/
tropical fish (n)	/'trɒpɪkl 'fɪʃ/
yacht (n)	/'jɒt/
56 Does that include ... ? (exp)	/dʌz, ðæt m'klud/
How many ... ? (exp)	/'haʊ 'meni/
I'd like to ... (exp)	/'aɪd 'laɪk tu/
We'd like ... (exp)	/'wi:d 'laɪk/
What name is it? (exp)	/'wɒt 'neɪm ɪz ɪt/
When for? (exp)	/'wen 'fɔ:(r)/
bed and breakfast (n)	/'bed ən 'brekfəst/
Do not disturb. (exp)	/'du: nɒt dɪ'stɜ:b/
lobby (n)	/'lɒbi/
reception (n)	/'rɪ'sepʃn/
vacancies (n pl)	/'veɪkənsɪz/

Review 57-64

1a Look at the definitions. Write the missing letters.

- 1 You sit on this.
a chair
- 2 You put rubbish in this.
a w_____ b_____
- 3 You make copies with this.
a p_____
- 4 You put books on this.
a s_____
- 5 You keep files in this.
a f_____ c_____

b Write four more office items.

a computer

2a Match the halves of the words.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------|
| 1 a washing <u>e</u> | a cleaner |
| 2 an air _____ | b radio |
| 3 an electric _____ | c conditioner |
| 4 a light _____ | d player |
| 5 a vacuum _____ | e machine |
| 6 a DVD _____ | f fan |
| 7 a clock _____ | g bulb |

b What things do you use in your home?

I use a washing machine,

Grammar

3 Julia is a secretary. Look at the table. Make six sentences about her job. Use *has to* / *must*, *doesn't have to*, or *mustn't*.

She must arrive on time.

Necessary	Not necessary	Not allowed
arrive on time	make coffee for the boss	wear jeans
answer the phone	do shift work	smoke in the office

4 Rewrite the advice. Use *should* / *shouldn't*.

- 1 You *shouldn't* drink alcohol and drive.
- 1 Don't drink alcohol and drive.
- 2 Have a holiday.
- 3 Go to the doctor's.
- 4 Don't eat lots of chocolate.
- 5 Get a new car.
- 6 Don't stand on the table.

Skills

5 Read the text. Answer the questions.



In Scotland about 13,000 people a year die because they smoke cigarettes. In 2004 the Scottish Parliament passed a new law. Since 2006, people can't smoke in public places (pubs, cafés, restaurants, offices). In a pub in Glasgow we asked people about the new law.

Jimmy Kenzie: Well, I work in this pub. I don't smoke so I think the new law is a good idea.

Rod Dunbar: I agree with Jimmy. The pub is much nicer now and we can smoke in the pub garden.

Mary Brown: In my opinion the law is a bad idea. Now I have to smoke outside in the rain.

- 1 How many people in Scotland die each year because they smoke?
- 2 What public places does the writer mention?
- 3 When was the new law passed?
- 4 Where are the people?
- 5 Who thinks the law is a good idea?
- 6 Who thinks the law is a bad idea?
- 7 Has your country got a law like this?

6 Complete the greetings.

let surprise take nice come

- 1 Hi, Petra. Come on in.
- 2 _____ a seat.
- 3 _____ me get you a drink.
- 4 This is a nice _____.
- 5 It's _____ to see you.

7 Read the dialogues. Complete the words.

- 1 A Why is there water in the kitchen?
B The washing machine is leaking.
- 2 A Can I borrow your camera?
B I'm sorry, it isn't w _____ ing.
- 3 A Are you going to buy that kettle?
B No, it's sc _____ t _____ h _____ d.
- 4 A Why aren't you wearing your new shirt?
B It's t _____ n.
- 5 A What's wrong with this jumper?
B It's got a big h _____ e in it.

Wordlist 57-64

- 57** cupboard (n) /'kʌbəd/
 filing cabinet (n) /'faɪlɪŋ ,kæbɪnət/
 photocopier (n) /'fəʊtəʊkəpiə(r)/
 printer (n) /'prɪntə(r)/
 shelf (n) /ʃelf/
 waste bin (n) /'weɪst bɪn/
 do some filing (v) /,duː səm 'faɪlɪŋ/
 do some photocopying (v) /,duː səm 'fəʊtəʊkəpiɪŋ/
 go on the Internet (v) /,gəʊ ɒn ði 'ɪntənət/
 go to a meeting (v) /,gəʊ tu ə 'miːtɪŋ/
 have a break (v) /,hæv ə 'breɪk/
 have a day off (v) /,hæv ə deɪ 'ɒf/
 make a phone call (v) /,meɪk ə 'fəʊn ,kɔːl/
 make an appointment (v) /,meɪk ən ə'pɔɪntmənt/
 send an email (v) /,send ən 'iːmeɪl/
 send a letter (v) /,send ə 'leɪtə(r)/
- 58** don't have to (modal) /dəʊnt 'hæv tu/
 have to (modal) /'hæv tu/
 must (modal) /mʌst/
 mustn't (modal) /'mʌsnt/
- 59** a couple of hours (exp) /ə ,kʌpl əv 'aʊəz/
 an hour (exp) /ən 'aʊə(r)/
 an hour and a half (exp) /ən ,aʊə(r) ənd ə 'haɪf/
 an hour and a quarter /ən ,aʊə(r) ənd ə 'kwɔːtə(r)/
 half an hour (exp) /,haɪf ən 'aʊə(r)/
 two and a half hours (exp) /tuː ənd ə haɪf 'aʊə(r)z/
 by car (adv) /baɪ 'kɑː(r)/
 come home (v) /,kʌm 'həʊm/
 journey (n) /'dʒɜːni/
 rush hour (n) /'rʌʃ aʊə(r)/
 school run (n) /'skuːl rʌn/
 summer (n) /'sʌmə(r)/
 take (time) (v) /teɪk/
 take the train (v) /,teɪk ðə 'treɪn/
 traffic jam (n) /'træfɪk dʒæm/
- 60** Come on in. (exp) /,kʌm ɒn 'ɪn/
 surprise /sə'praɪz/
 Take a seat. (exp) /,teɪk ə 'siːt/
 accept (v) /ək'sept/
 hard (adj) /hɑːd/
 have a look (v) /hæv ə 'lʊk/
 I don't believe it! (exp) /aɪ ,dəʊnt brɪ'liːv ɪt/
 refuse (v) /rɪ'fjuːz/
 subject (n) /'sʌbdʒɪkt/

- 61** air conditioner (n) /'eə(r) kənɪdɪʃənə(r)/
 clock radio (n) /,klɒk 'reɪdiəʊ/
 dishwasher (n) /'dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/
 DVD player (n) /,diː viː 'diː ,pleɪə(r)/
 electric fan (n) /ɪˌlektɪk 'fæn/
 hairdryer (n) /'heədraɪə(r)/
 heater (n) /'hiːtə(r)/
 kettle (n) /'ketl/
 light bulb (n) /'laɪt bʌlb/
 microwave (n) /'maɪkrəweɪv/
 shaver (n) /'ʃeɪvə(r)/
 toaster (n) /'təʊstə(r)/
 vacuum cleaner (n) /'vækjuəm ,kliːnə(r)/
 washing machine (n) /'wɒʃɪŋ məˌʃiːn/
 clean the car (v) /,kliːn ðə 'kɑː(r)/
 clean the windows (v) /,kliːn ðə 'wɪndəʊz/
 cook the dinner (v) /,kʊk ðə 'dɪnə(r)/
 do the shopping (v) /,duː ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ/
 do the ironing (v) /,duː ði 'aɪrənɪŋ/
 do the washing up (v) /,duː ðə wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/
 lay the table (v) /,leɪ ðə 'teɪbl/
 make breakfast (v) /,meɪk 'brekfəst/
 make the beds (v) /,meɪk ðə 'bedz/
 take out the rubbish (v) /,teɪk aʊt ðə 'rʌbɪʃ/
 tidy the garden (v) /,taɪdi ðə 'ɡɑːdn/
 tidy the room (v) /,taɪdi ðə 'ruːm/
- 62** should (modal) /ʃʊd/
 shouldn't (modal) /'ʃʊdnt/
 caution (n) /'kɔːʃn/
 floor (n) /flɔː(r)/
 Mind your head. (exp) /,maɪnd yɔː 'hed/
 slippery (exp) /'slɪpəri/
 touch (exp) /tʌtʃ/
 warning (n) /'wɔːnɪŋ/
- 63** agree (v) /'əɡriː/
 I don't think so. (exp) /aɪ ,dəʊnt 'θɪŋk səʊ/
 In my opinion, ... (exp) /ɪn 'maɪ əpɪnjən/
 good idea (n) /,ɡʊd aɪ'dɪə/
 domestic job (n) /də'mestɪk dʒɒb/
 housework (n) /'haʊswɜːk/
 introduce a law (v) /ɪntrəˌdjuːs ə 'ləː/
 pass a law (v) /,pɑːs ə 'ləː/
 share (v) /ʃeə(r)/
- 64** It isn't working. (exp) /ɪt ,ɪznt 'wɜːkɪŋ/
 It's damaged. (exp) /ɪts 'dæmɪdʒd/
 It's got a hole in it. (exp) /ɪts ɡɒt ə 'həʊl ɪn ɪt/
 It's leaking. (exp) /ɪts 'liːkɪŋ/
 It's scratched. (exp) /ɪts skrætʃt/
 It's torn. (exp) /ɪts tɔːn/
 exchange (n) /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/
 receipt (n) /rɪ'siːt/
 refund (n) /'rɪːfʌnd/

Review 65-72

Vocabulary

1a Look around you. Write six things that you can see.
a cupboard

b What is each thing made of?
The cupboard is made of wood.

c Write four more materials.

2 Match the computer words with the definitions.

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 click <u>b</u> | a turn off your computer |
| 2 restart <u>—</u> | b press on a button on the mouse |
| 3 quit <u>—</u> | c you see icons and windows on this |
| 4 shut down <u>—</u> | d you save your files here |
| 5 a folder <u>—</u> | e finish using a program |
| 6 the desktop <u>—</u> | f turn your computer off then on again |

Grammar

3 Make sentences with the present simple passive. Use the cues.

- Newspapers and magazines are saved.*
- Newspapers and magazines / save.
- Green bins / deliver to people's houses.
- Newspapers / put into the bins.
- The paper / collect.
- It / take to the recycling centre.
- The paper / clean.
- It / use to make newspapers.

4 Complete the sentences. Use the past simple passive of the words in brackets.

- Millions of plastic bottles were sold (sell) last year.
- Only 3% of the bottles — (recycle).
- Some of the plastic — (use) to make clothes.
- A lot of money — (save).
- More recycling centres — (open).

5 Choose the correct relative pronoun.

- That's the man *who/which* repaired my car.
- She's the actress *that/which* was in *Titanic*.
- These are the books *who/that* we borrowed.
- This is the CD player *who/which* isn't working.
- People *that/which* are rich aren't always happy.
- Are these the jeans *who/that* you bought?

Skills

6 Read the text. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?



Bonfire Night

In 1605 a man named Guy Fawkes tried to destroy the Houses of Parliament in London. His plan failed and he was caught. Every year, on 5 November, people in

England celebrate this. Big models of Guy Fawkes are made from newspaper and old clothes. People build big fires in their gardens and the guy is put on top and burnt. There are lots of parties and people eat baked potatoes and a special 'bonfire' cake.

- Guy Fawkes tried to destroy London.
- Guy Fawkes' plan didn't fail.
- Bonfire Night is celebrated every year.
- Models of the Houses of Parliament are made from newspaper.
- The guy is burnt outdoors.
- People bake bread and eat fruit.

7 Read Cecilia's details. Complete her profile.

Name: Cecilia

Age: 33

From: Cartagena (north-west Colombia).

Job: secretary

Appearance: quite tall, slim, brown eyes, brown hair

Hobbies: reading, the theatre

Likes: friendly people

Looking for: someone to go to the theatre with

My name's ¹ *Cecilia*. I'm ² 33 years old and I'm from ³ Cartagena in ⁴ Colombia. I'm a ⁵ secretary in a factory. I'm ⁶ quite tall, slim and I've got ⁷ brown eyes, brown hair. My hobbies are reading and ⁸ the theatre. I like people who are ⁹ friendly. I'm looking for someone who wants to ¹⁰ go to the theatre with me.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make expressions.

- Oh, know I that didn't .
- sure you Are ?
- you Yes, 're right .
- 's true That .

Wordlist 65-72

65 cardboard (n)	/ˈkɑːdbɔːd/
cotton (n)	/ˈkɒtn/
glass (n)	/glɑːs/
gold (n)	/gəʊld/
leather (n)	/ˈleðə(r)/
metal (n)	/ˈmetl/
paper (n)	/ˈpeɪpə(r)/
plastic (n)	/ˈplæstɪk/
rubber (n)	/ˈrʌbə(r)/
silver (n)	/ˈsɪlvə(r)/
wood (n)	/wud/
wool (n)	/wʊl/
It's made of ... (exp)	/ɪts ˈmeɪd əv/
recycle (v)	/ˌrɪˈsaɪkl/

66 build (v)	/bɪld/
by hand (adv)	/baɪ ˈhænd/
check (v)	/tʃek/
colleague (n)	/ˈkɒliːg/
destroy (v)	/dɪˈstrɔɪ/
explosion (n)	/ɪkˈspləʊʒn/
history programme (n)	/ˈhɪstri ˌprəʊgræm/
hobby (n)	/ˈhɒbi/
model (n)	/ˈmɒdl/
normal (adj)	/ˈnɔːml/
plan (n)	/plæn/
plant (n)	/plɑːnt/
produce (v)	/prəˈdjuːs/
real (adj)	/ˈriːəl/
second (n)	/ˈsekənd/
(a) sixth (n)	/sɪksθ/

67 greetings card (n)	/ˈgriːtɪŋz ˌkɑːd/
anniversary (n)	/æniˈvɜːsəri/
birth (n)	/bɜːθ/
Christmas (n)	/ˈkrɪsməs/
death (n)	/deθ/
Father's Day (n)	/ˈfɑːðə(r)z ˌdeɪ/
Mother's Day (n)	/ˈmʌðə(r)z ˌdeɪ/
Valentine's Day (n)	/ˈvæləntaɪnz ˌdeɪ/
celebrate (v)	/ˈselɪbreɪt/
dead (n)	/ded/
festival (n)	/ˈfestɪvl/
rainy season (n)	/ˈreɪni ˌsiːzn/
relative (n)	/ˈrelatɪv/

68 Are you sure? (exp)	/ˌɑː juː ˈʃʊə(r)/
That's true. (exp)	/ˈðætɪz truː/
right (adj)	/raɪt/
block (n)	/blɒk/
meanwhile (adv)	/ˈmiːnwaɪl/
sign (v)	/saɪn/
tell (v)	/tel/
work (v)	/wɜːk/

69 attachment (n)	/əˈtætʃmənt/
cursor (n)	/ˈkɜːrsə(r)/
desktop (n)	/ˈdeskɪtp/
file (n)	/faɪl/
folder (n)	/ˈfəʊldə(r)/
icon (n)	/ˈaɪkɒn/
menu (n)	/ˈmenjuː/
menu bar (n)	/ˈmenjuː ˌbɑː(r)/
program (n)	/ˈprəʊgræm/
window (n)	/ˈwɪndəʊ/
click (v)	/klɪk/
close (v)	/kloʊz/
delete (v)	/dɪˈliːt/
open (v)	/ˈəʊpən/
quit (v)	/kwɪt/
re-start (v)	/ˌriːˈstɑːt/
save (v)	/seɪv/
scroll down (v)	/ˌskroʊl ˈdaʊn/
shut down (v)	/ˌʃʌt ˈdaʊn/

70 that (pron)	/ðæt/
which (pron)	/wɪtʃ/
who (pron)	/huː/

71 active (adj)	/ˈæktɪv/
businessman (n)	/ˈbɪznəsmæn/
city professional (n)	/ˌsɪti prəˈfeʃənl/
drunk (adj)	/drʌŋk/
ex-partner (n)	/ˌeks ˈpɑːtnə(r)/
honest (adj)	/ˈɒnɪst/
interest (n)	/ˈɪntrəst/
Internet dating (n)	/ˌɪntənət ˈdeɪtɪŋ/
last (v)	/lɑːst/
love life (n)	/ˈlʌv laɪf/
online (adj)	/ˌɒnˈlaɪn/
ordinary-looking (adj)	/ˌɔːdnəri ˌlʊkɪŋ/
outdoor activity (n)	/ˌaʊtdɔː(r) əkˈtɪvəti/
profile (n)	/ˈprəʊfaɪl/
psychologist (n)	/saɪˈkɒlədʒɪst/
sporty (adj)	/ˈspɔːti/
suburbs (n pl)	/ˈsʌbəːbz/

72 adaptor (n)	/əˈdæptə(r)/
architect (n)	/ˈɑːkɪtekt/
carry (v)	/ˈkæri/
civil engineer (n)	/ˌsɪvl ɛndʒɪˈniə(r)/
electrical appliance (n)	/ˌɪlektɪrɪkl əˈplaɪəns/
football pitch (n)	/ˈfʊtbɔːl pɪtʃ/
plug (n)	/plʌg/
relation (n)	/rɪˈleɪʃn/
screen (n)	/skriːn/
screensaver (n)	/ˈskriːnsɜːvə(r)/
stadium (n)	/ˈsteɪdiəm/
pipe (n)	/paɪp/

Review 73-80

Vocabulary

1 Complete the phrasal verbs.

away up back on for down

- Oh, you're busy. I'll come back later.
- Put _____ a jumper, or you'll be cold.
- The photocopier has broken _____.
- What are you looking _____?
- Turn _____ the TV. We can't hear it.
- Don't throw _____ that letter. I need it.

2a Choose the correct word.

- My job is *boring* / *bored* and my boss is always *miserable* / *proud*. She was *annoying* / *annoyed* this morning because I was late.
- Benji was *exciting* / *excited* about going scuba-diving for the first time, but he was also a little *worrying* / *worried*. However, it was really *interesting* / *interested*.

b How do you feel now? Why?

Grammar

3 Put the time expressions in the correct column.

ages	a few years	last Monday	July
1987	a long time	two months	three o'clock

for	since
ages	last Monday

4 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect or the past simple.

- I'm divorced. I _____ married for six years. (be)
- We _____ here for a long time and we like it. (live)
- He _____ the piano since he was 12. (play)
- I _____ here since one o'clock. (be)
- She's retired. She _____ in a shop for 40 years. (work)

5 Make questions and sentences with the second conditional. Use the cues.

- Would you help him if he asked you?
- you / help / him / if / he / ask / you?
- She / do / more exercise / if / she / have / more time.
- If / I / lose / my job / I / find / another.
- If / Yanni / find / some money / he / not / spend it.
- We / save / our dog / if / our house / be / on fire.
- you / marry me / if / I / win the lottery?

Skills

6a Read the text. Answer the questions.



I still live in Leeds and am happily married with three children.



I live in Bristol with my husband and our daughter, Jane. I'm a doctor. We left Leeds in 1992.



Divorced, living in Leeds, two sons. I'd love to hear from old friends.



Accountant in New York. Left England and spent five years teaching in Chile. Single.

- Which people have moved to another place?
Kerry, Jim.
- How many people have got children?
- Who isn't married?
- Which countries has Jim lived in?
- Who has changed his/her job?

b Write an entry for a school website for yourself.

Lesson for everyday life

7 Complete the note.

just	dear	presents	delicious
thank you	wishes	hope	really

¹ Dear Miriam

We're ² _____ writing to say ³ _____ for the Christmas ⁴ _____ that you sent. The chocolates were ⁵ _____ and we ⁶ _____ like the fruit bowl.

⁷ _____ to see you soon.

Best ⁸ _____

Julia and Phil

Wordlist 73-80

- 73** break down (v) /breɪk 'daʊn/
 come back (v) /,kʌm 'bæk/
 come in (v) /,kʌm 'ɪn/
 get up (v) /,get 'ʌp/
 go away (v) /,gəʊ ə'weɪ/
 go out (v) /,gəʊ 'aʊt/
 look after (v) /,lʊk 'ɑːftə(r)/
 look back (v) /,lʊk 'bæk/
 look down (v) /,lʊk 'daʊn/
 look for (v) /'lʊk fɔː(r)/
 look up (v) /,lʊk 'ʌp/
 put on (v) /,pʊt 'ɒn/
 switch off (v) /,swɪtʃ 'ɒf/
 switch on (v) /,swɪtʃ 'ɒn/
 take off (v) /,teɪk 'ɒf/
 throw away (v) /,θrəʊ ə'weɪ/
 try on (v) /,traɪ 'ɒn/
 turn down (v) /,tɜːn 'daʊn/
 turn up (v) /,tɜːn 'ʌp/
- 74** away (adv) /ə'weɪ/
 each other (pron) /iːtʃ 'ʌðə(r)/
 for (prep) /fɔː(r)/
 boring (adj) /'bɔːrɪŋ/
 lovely (adj) /'lʌvli/
 meat (n) /miːt/
 nearly (adv) /'niːəli/
 since (prep) /sɪns/
 vegetarian (n) /,vedʒə'teəriən/
- 75** How are you? (exp) /,haʊ ə 'juː/
 It's good to see you. (exp) /ɪts, gud tə 'siː ju/
 event (n) /ɪ'vent/
 former (adj) /'fɔːmə(r)/
 free time (n) /,friː 'taɪm/
 insurance company (n) /ɪn'sʊərəns ,kʌmpəni/
 raise money (v) /,reɪz 'mʌni/
 reunion (n) /riː'juːniən/
 same (adj) /seɪm/
- 76** answer the phone (v) /'ɑːnsə ðə ,fəʊn/
 hang up (v) /,hæŋ 'ʌp/
 I'll try his mobile. (exp) /aɪl ,traɪ hɪz 'məʊbaɪl/
 no reply (exp) /,nəʊ rɪ'plaɪ/
 re-charge (v) /,riː'tʃɑːdʒ/
 ring (v) /rɪŋ/
 empty (adj) /'empti/
 on the way (exp) /,ɒn ðə 'weɪ/
 solicitor (n) /sə'lɪsɪtə(r)/

- 77** annoyed (adj) /ə'nɔɪd/
 annoying (adj) /ə'nɔɪŋ/
 bored (adj) /bɔːd/
 confused (adj) /kən'fjuːzd/
 confusing (adj) /kən'fjuːzɪŋ/
 embarrassed (adj) /ɪm'bærəst/
 embarrassing (adj) /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/
 excited (adj) /ɪk'saɪtɪd/
 exciting (adj) /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/
 frightened (adj) /'fraɪtnd/
 frightening (adj) /'fraɪtɪŋ/
 hungry (adj) /'hʌŋɡri/
 interested (adj) /'ɪntərəstɪd/
 miserable (adj) /'mɪzrəbl/
 proud (adj) /praʊd/
 relaxed (adj) /rɪ'læksɪd/
 surprised (adj) /sə'praɪzd/
 thirsty (adj) /'θɜːsti/
 tired (adj) /'taɪəd/
 tiring (adj) /'taɪərɪŋ/
 worried (adj) /'wʌrɪd/

- 78** certificate (n) /sə'tɪfɪkət/
 document (n) /'dɒkjumənt/
 get out (v) /,get 'aʊt/
 on fire /,ɒn 'faɪə/
 pet (n) /pet/
 replace (v) /rɪ'pleɪs/
 valuable (adj) /'væljuəbl/
 wallet (n) /'wɒlɪt/
 would (modal) /wʊd/

- 79** after a while (exp) /,æftə(r) ə 'waɪl/
 again and again (exp) /ə'gen ənd ə,gen/
 at first (exp) /æt 'fɜːst/
 for a long time (exp) /fɔː(r) ə ,lɒŋ 'taɪm/
 for a (short) while (exp) /fɔː(r) ə ,ʃɔːt 'waɪl/
 in the end (exp) /ɪn ði 'end/
 material things (n pl) /mə'tɪəriəl θɪŋz/
 memory (n) /'meməri/
 psychology (n) /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/
 skydiving (n) /'skɑːdaɪvɪŋ/

80 & Epilogue

- All the best (exp) /,ɔːl ðə 'best/
 Best wishes (exp) /,best 'wɪʃɪz/
 Hope to see you soon. (exp) /,həʊp tu ,siː ju 'suːn/
 I hope you're well. (exp) /aɪ ,həʊp jəː 'wel/
 I'm just writing to say ...
 (exp) /aɪm dʒʌst ,raɪtɪŋ tə seɪ/
 Just a note to say ... (exp) /dʒʌst ə ,nəʊt tə seɪ/
 Love (exp) /lʌv/
 Thank you for ... (exp) /'θæŋk juː fɔː(r)/
 calm down (exp) /,kɑːm 'daʊn/
 stupid (adj) /'stjuːpɪd/

Grammar reference

Lessons 1-4

to be

Statements

Positive

I 'm
He 's
She (is) married.
It (is)
We 're
You (are)
They (are)

Negative

I 'm not
He isn't
She (is not) Italian.
It (is not)
We aren't
You (are not)
They (are not)

Questions

To make questions with *to be* we put the verb in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He is from Korea.

Question: Is he from Korea? Yes, he is.
No, he isn't.

Statement: They are married.

Question: Are they married? Yes, they are.
No, they aren't.

2 wh- questions

Where are you from?
When is your birthday?

have/has got

We use *have/has got* to talk about:

possessions I've got a car.

family Have you got any brothers and sisters?

descriptions He's got short hair.

Positive and negative statements

I	've	
You	(have)	
We	haven't	
They	(have not)	a mobile phone.
	got	two brothers.
He	's	dark hair.
She	(has)	
It	hasn't	
	(has not)	

Questions

To make questions with *have got*, we put *have/has* in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He has got a brother.

Question: Has he got a brother? Yes, he has.
No, he hasn't.

Statement: You have got my address.

Question: Have you got my address? Yes, I have.
No, I haven't.

2 wh- questions

How many children have you got?
What kind of car has she got?

Lessons 5-8

Present simple

We use the present simple for:

1 permanent states

I like chocolate.
They live in Hong Kong.

2 regular activities

We get up at six o'clock.
She plays tennis on Saturdays.

Positive statements

I	
You	live
We	work
They	in France.
He	
She	lives
It	works

Spelling

	miss	misses
Verbs ending in -ss, -sh, -ch	finish	finishes
or -o, add -es.	watch	watches
	go	goes

When the verb ends in -y, we change the -y to -ies.

study	studies
-------	---------

Grammar reference

Negative statements

I			
You	don't		
We	(do not)	live	
They		work	here.
He			
She	doesn't		
It	(does not)		

yes/no questions

	I		
	you		
Do	we		
	they	live	
	he	work	in India?
	she		
Does	it		

NOTE In negatives and questions we use the infinitive form of the verb.

She doesn't live here.

NOT ~~She doesn't lives here.~~

Does he play rugby?

NOT ~~Does he plays rugby?~~

Short answers

Positive		Negative
I		I
you	do.	you don't.
we		we (do not)
Yes, they		No, they
he		he
she	does.	she doesn't.
it		it (does not)

wh- questions

Where **do** you live?

When **does** he go to work?

Adverbs of frequency

1 Adverbs of frequency show how often something happens.

0% ----- 100%
never rarely sometimes often usually always
normally

2 We put the adverb of frequency:

- after the verb *to be* She's **always** here at 4.30.
- in front of a normal verb We **often** eat at this café.
- between an auxiliary and the main verb They don't **usually** work on Sundays.

Prepositions of time

1 We use *in* with:

years in 2003
months in September
seasons in winter
parts of the day in the afternoon
BUT at night

2 We use *on* with:

days on Tuesday
dates on 9 August
parts of a specific day on Monday morning

3 We use *at* with:

times at seven o'clock
the weekend at the weekend

Lessons 9-12

Past simple: positive and negative statements

We use the past simple to talk about completed events in the past.

to be

I	was		
He	wasn't		
She	(was not)	at work	last week.
It		on holiday	yesterday.
We	were	away	
You	weren't		
They	(were not)		

Grammar reference

Regular verbs

NOTE The past simple is the same for all subjects.

For most verbs, we add -ed .	play	played
	watch	watched
When the verb ends in -e , we add -d .	close	closed
	like	liked

When the verb ends in a short vowel and a single consonant, we double the consonant and add **-ed**.

drop	dropped
grab	grabbed

When the verb ends in **-y**, we change the **-y** to **-ied**.

hurry	hurried
-------	---------

NOTE When the verb ends in **-t** or **-d**, we pronounce the final syllable /ɪd/:

wanted /wɒntɪd/
needed /niːdɪd/

Irregular verbs

Many common verbs have an irregular past form.

go They went skiing last month.
see I saw that film yesterday.

See the list of irregular verbs on page 123.

Negative statements

I		
He		
She	didn't	cook the meal.
It	(did not)	go shopping.
We		have lunch.
You		
They		

NOTE After **didn't** we use the infinitive form of the verb.

We didn't like the play.
~~NOT We didn't liked the play.~~
He didn't go to work.
~~NOT He didn't went to work.~~

Because and so

- We use **because** to give a reason or cause.
I didn't go to work, **because** I was ill.
- We use **so** to show a result or effect.
I was ill, **so** I didn't go to work.

Lessons 13–16

Years

We normally give years like this:

1853 eighteen fifty-three 2042 twenty forty-two
1902 nineteen oh two

NOTE For 2000 to 2009 we say *two thousand (and) ...*
2004 two thousand and four

Past simple questions and short answers

The verb *to be*

To make questions with *to be* we put the verb in front of the subject.

1 *yes/no* questions and short answers

Statement: She was on holiday.

Question: Was she on holiday? Yes, she was.
No, she wasn't.

Statement: They were at home.

Question: Were they at home? Yes, they were.
No, they weren't.

2 *wh-* questions

Where were you last week?
When was the party?

Regular and irregular verbs

yes/no questions

I		
he		
she	like the film?	
Did it	go skiing?	
we	pay the bill?	
you		
they		

Short answers

Positive

I	
he	
she	
Yes, it	did.
we	
you	
they	

Negative

I	
he	
she	
No, it	didn't.
we	
you	
they	

Grammar reference

3 *wh*- questions

What did **you** do?

When did **they** leave?

NOTE In questions we use the infinitive form of the verb.

Did you **stay** in a hotel?

NOT Did you ~~stayed~~ in a hotel?

What did you **buy**?

NOT What did you ~~bought~~?

Infinitive of purpose

We use an infinitive to show why somebody does something.

We went to the shops.

Why did you go?

We went to the shops **to buy** a new computer.

Lessons 17–20

Present continuous

1 We use the present continuous to say what is happening at the moment.

They're playing football at the moment.

I'm wearing jeans today.

2 We make the present continuous with the verb *to be* and the *-ing* form of the verb (the present participle).

Statements

Positive

I 'm
(am)

He 's
She (is) swimming.
It eating.

We 're
You (are)
They

Negative

I 'm not
(am) not

He isn't
She (is not) jogging.
It listening.

We aren't
You (are not)
They

Spelling

1 For verbs that end in *-e*, we remove the *-e* and add *-ing*.

write writing

use using

2 For verbs with a short vowel and only one consonant, we double the consonant and add *-ing*.

run running

stop stopping

Questions

To make questions we put the verb *to be* in front of the subject.

1 *yes/no* questions and short answers

Statement: He ~~is~~ waiting for the bus.

Question: Is ~~he~~ waiting for the bus? Yes, he is.
No, he isn't.

Statement: They ~~are~~ having a break.

Question: Are ~~they~~ having a break? Yes, they are.
No, they aren't.

2 *wh*- questions

Where **are you** going?

What **is she** wearing?

Present simple and present continuous

1 We use the present simple for regular activities.

They play tennis on Saturdays.

We often use these expressions with the present simple:

often, always, every day, usually, on Tuesdays

2 We use the present continuous to say what is happening at the moment.

They ~~aren't playing~~ tennis today, because it's raining.

They're watching TV at the moment.

We often use these expressions with the present continuous:

now, at the moment, today, this morning

Stative verbs

We don't normally use these verbs in the present continuous form even when they refer to the present moment:

like, love, prefer, hate, want, need

I want to listen to the radio.

NOT I'm wanting to listen to the radio.

Grammar reference

Lessons 21–24

Past continuous

- We use the past continuous for an activity in progress in the past.
I was waiting for the bus.
The men were having a break.
- We make the past continuous with the past simple of the verb *to be* and the *-ing* form of the verb (the present participle).

Positive and negative statements

I	was	
He	wasn't	
She	(was not)	going to the bank.
It		having a shower.
We	were	wearing jeans.
You	weren't	
They	were not	

Questions

To make questions we put *was* or *were* in front of the subject.

- yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: He was wearing a jacket.

Question: Was he wearing a jacket? Yes, he was.
No, he wasn't.

Statement: You were having dinner.

Question: Were you having dinner? Yes, we were.
No, we weren't.

- wh- questions

Where were they standing?
What was she doing?

Past continuous and past simple

- The past continuous describes an event in progress in the past.
I was having a bath.
- The past simple shows a completed action or event in the past.
The doorbell rang.
- We often use the past continuous and the past simple together. The past continuous sets the scene.

The past simple says what happened. We usually join the clauses with *while*, *as*, or *when*.

While I was having a bath, the doorbell rang.

I was having a bath.
----->
↑
The doorbell rang.

- We use two past simple verbs when two things happened, one after the other.

When the doorbell rang, I got out of the bath.

----->
↑ ↑
The doorbell rang. I got out of the bath.

Lessons 25–28

Articles with geographical names

The

rivers	The Amazon
seas	The Black Sea
oceans	The Atlantic (Ocean)
deserts	The Kalahari (Desert)
mountain ranges	The Alps
groups of islands	The Bahamas
some countries	The USA, The UK, The Czech Republic

No The

mountains	Mount Fuji
lakes	Lake Balaton
continents	Africa
countries	Morocco
islands	Sicily

going to

We use *going to* for:

- intentions and decisions
We're going to have a party.
- a definite future
Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

Grammar reference

Positive and negative statements

I	'm (am) 'm not (am not)		
He	's (is)	going to	have a sandwich.
She	isn't		go windsurfing.
It	(is not)		watch a DVD.
			play the piano.
We	're (are)		
You	aren't		
They	(are not)		

Questions

To make questions with *going to*, we put the verb *am*, *is*, or *are* in front of the subject.

1 yes/no questions and short answers

Statement: ~~She is~~ going to buy a car.

Question: ~~Is she~~ going to buy a car? Yes, she is.
No, she isn't.

Statement: ~~You are~~ going to leave.

Question: ~~Are you~~ going to leave? Yes, I am.
No, I'm not.

2 wh- questions

How are you going to travel?

What are you going to do?

Large numbers

1 We separate large numbers with a comma.

25,000 twenty-five thousand

6,000,000 six million

2 We say:

twenty-five **thousand** kilometres.

NOT ~~twenty-five thousands~~ kilometres.

six **million** people

NOT ~~six millions of~~ people

Lessons 29–32

Adjectives and adverbs

1 An adjective describes a noun.

He's a **slow** driver.

This is an **easy** exercise.

2 An adverb describes a verb.

He drives **slowly**.

You can do this exercise **easily**.

	Adjective	Adverb
	slow	slowly
+ <i>ly</i>	bad	badly
	careful	carefully
- <i>y</i> + <i>ily</i>	easy	easily
	busy	busily
- <i>le</i> + <i>ly</i>	terrible	terribly
	horrible	horribly
Irregular	good	well
	fast	fast

like + -ing

To talk about likes and dislikes with activities we usually use the *-ing* form of the verb.

Do you like **meeting** new people?

We hate **jogging**.

I prefer **skating** to **skiing**.

For the spelling rules of the *-ing* forms, see Lessons 17–20 above.

one/ones

We normally use *one* or *ones* as a pronoun after an adjective.

Do you like this coat?

I prefer the black **one**. (i.e. the black coat)

Can I have a look at those bags, please?

The big **ones** or the small **ones**? (i.e. the big bags or the small bags)

Grammar reference

Lessons 33–36

Present perfect

- 1 We use the present perfect to talk about experiences in our life up to the present.
I've ridden a camel.
Have you ever **done** yoga?
We often use *ever* and *never* with the present perfect.
Have you **ever** been to Brazil?
I've **never** flown in a helicopter.

Positive and negative statements

I	've	
You	(have)	
We	haven't	seen the Pyramids.
They	(have not)	slept in a tent.
He	's	worked abroad.
She	(has)	been to Russia.
It	hasn't	
	(has not)	

- 2 We make the present perfect with the verb *have/has* and the past participle of the verb.
To form regular past participles, we add *-ed* to the verb stem.
play played
live lived

This is the same as the regular past. (See Lessons 9–12 above for spelling rules.)

- 3 Verbs with an irregular past simple also have an irregular past participle.

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
do	did	done
see	saw	seen
take	took	taken

See the list of irregular verbs on page 123.

Questions

To make questions with the present perfect, we put *have/has* in front of the subject.

- 1 *yes/no* questions and short answers

Statement: He **has** worked abroad.

Question: **Has** he worked abroad? Yes, he has.
No, he hasn't.

Statement: You **have** eaten sushi.

Question: **Have** you eaten sushi? Yes, I have.
No, I haven't

- 2 *wh-* questions

How many times **have** you been to Australia?

What sports **have** you played?

been and gone

- 1 In the present perfect we use *been* instead of *gone* when we are talking about our experiences.

Have you ever **been** to Indonesia?

Yes, I have.

I've never **been** hang-gliding.

- 2 *Been* means *go and come back*.

I've **been** to Berlin. I'm not in Berlin now.

He's **gone** to Berlin. He's in Berlin now.

Present perfect with present result

We use the present perfect for a past action with a result in the present. We don't know when the action happened, and it isn't important.

They've **gone** to China. They're in China now.

A storm **has destroyed** the bridge. You can't use the bridge now.

She's **lost** her keys. She can't find her keys now.

Lessons 37–40

Possessive adjectives

We use a possessive adjective when we talk about a part of the body.

Her leg's swollen.

I've hurt my hand.

You've got a bruise on your leg.

Present perfect and past simple

- 1 The present perfect links the past with the present.

—————→ Now.

We use it for:

- a past action with a result in the present.

She's **gone** out. She isn't at home now.

We've **had** lunch. We aren't hungry now.

Grammar reference

- experiences up to the present.

I've **been** to New York three times. (up to now)

He's **never broken** his arm. (up to now)

2 The past simple describes a completed action in the past.



We use it when:

- we are interested in the action itself not the effect.

I've hurt my leg. I **fell off** a ladder.

- when we are interested in the actual time of the event.

I **saw** John yesterday.

NOTE When there is a past time reference (*yesterday, last year, in November*), we must use the past simple, not the present perfect.

I **saw** John yesterday.

~~NOT I've seen John yesterday.~~

Lessons 41-44

Expressing quantity

1 Some nouns are countable. They have a singular and a plural form.

You need **an apple**. You need **some apples**.

2 Some nouns are uncountable. They have only one form.

You need **some fruit**.

3 These things are usually uncountable:

- **Drinks** coffee, tea, wine, water, beer, milk
- **Food** which you only eat part of bread, cheese, fish meat
- **Things** which you only use part of toothpaste, shampoo, soap
- **Materials** paper, wood, plastic
- **Some general words** music, money, information

4 We use these articles and quantity expressions with countable and uncountable nouns:

Countable nouns

Singular	a/an	You need a knife. He's got an apple.
	some/any	You need some strawberries. We haven't got any strawberries.
Plural		Have you got any apples?
	How many	How many apples do you need?
	not many	We don't need many apples.
	a few	We need a few blackcurrants.

Uncountable nouns

One form		You need some bread.
	some/any	We haven't got any milk.
		Have you got any fruit?
	How much	How much bread do you need?
	not much	We don't need much bread.
	a little	We need a little milk.

5 To talk about quantities of an uncountable noun we use quantity expressions, e.g.:

- a bottle of
- a kilo of
- a slice of
- a box of
- a piece of

We've got **a bottle of** water.

You need **three bottles of** water.

Can I have **a slice of** bread?

Here are **two slices of** bread.

but/however

We use **but** and **however** to contrast two things. Note the difference in punctuation.

I don't eat a lot. I still put on weight.

I don't eat a lot, **but** I still put on weight.

I don't eat a lot. **However**, I still put on weight.

Lessons 45-48

Comparatives and superlatives

1 We use a comparative to compare two people, places or things.

Karen is **older** than Mark.

After a comparative we normally use **than**.

2 We use a superlative to compare more than two people, places or things.

Salim is **the oldest** person in our class.

We must have **the** before a superlative.

This is **the** smallest restaurant.

~~NOT This is smallest restaurant.~~

After a superlative we normally use **in**.

This is **the** busiest street **in** our town.

~~NOT This is the busiest street of our town.~~

Grammar reference

Spelling

- 1 To make the comparative of adjectives we add **-er**.
To make the superlative of adjectives we add **-est**.

young	younger	the youngest
long	longer	the longest

- 2 For adjectives that end in **-e**, we add **-r** or **-st**.

large	larger	the largest
nice	nicer	the nicest

- 3 For adjectives with a short vowel and only one consonant, we double the consonant and add **-er** or **-est**.

hot	hotter	the hottest
big	bigger	the biggest

- 4 For adjectives that end in **-y**, we remove the **-y** and add **-ier** or **-iest**.

busy	busier	the busiest
easy	easier	the easiest

- 5 For adjectives with two or more syllables (where the second syllable is not **-y**), we do not add **-er** or **-est**. We put **more** or **the most** in front of the adjective.

popular	more popular	the most popular
interesting	more interesting	the most interesting

- 6 Some adjectives are irregular.

good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst
far	further	the furthest

(not) as ... as

We can use **(not) as ... as** to compare people, places and things.

This café isn't as busy as that one.

Our new neighbours aren't as friendly as our old neighbours.

too / enough

We use **too** and **enough** to say why something isn't right.

These shoes are **too** small.

They aren't big **enough**.

NOT They aren't enough big.

This shirt is **too** short.

It isn't long **enough**.

Lessons 49–52

Future with will

- 1 We use the future with **will** to make predictions or general statements about the future.

In the future people **will live** on the Moon.

We'll be late for the meeting.

Positive and negative statements

I

He

'll

She

(will)

be late.

It

(will)

work from home.

We

won't

pay the bill.

You

(will not)

They

- 2 To make questions with **will**, we put **will** in front of the subject.

yes / no questions and short answers

Statement: We **will** use cash.

Question: Will we use cash? Yes, we will.
No, we won't.

wh- questions

How **will** people pay for things?

Where **will** we live?

Lessons 53–56

ing (gerunds)

- 1 When we talk about an activity we normally use the **-ing** form of the verb (the gerund).

We love **skiing**.

NOT We love ski.

I've never tried **scuba-diving**.

NOT I've never tried scuba-dive.

- 2 We don't normally use an article with a gerund

Horse riding is great.

NOT The horse riding is great.

My favourite activity is **reading**.

NOT My favourite activity is the reading.

Grammar reference

First conditional

- 1 We use first conditionals to talk about the real or probable results of an action or event.
If you **get up** late, you'll miss your bus.
- 2 We use the present simple in the *if* clause and the future with *will* in the main clause.
if clause main clause
If it rains, we **won't go** to the beach.
~~NOT If it will rain, we won't go to the beach.~~
- 3 The *if* clause can come before or after the main clause. If it comes before the main clause, we put a comma at the end of the *if* clause.
If it rains, we won't go to the beach.
We won't go to the beach if it rains.

4 *if/when*

We use *if* for a possible condition. We use *when* for a definite condition.

- I'll phone you **if** the train is late.
I'll phone you **when** I arrive.

Time clauses

We use the first conditional form with time clauses as well as *if* clauses. Time clauses start with words such as: before, after, when, while

- We'll go swimming **before** we have lunch.
~~NOT We'll go swimming before we will have lunch.~~
I'll phone him **after** the meeting finishes.
When the phone rings, I'll answer it.
They'll look after the bags **while** we have a meal.

Lessons 57-60

Obligation

- 1 We use *have to/has to* and *must* to show obligation.
We **have to** wait for the visitors.
Jim **has to** work on Sundays.
I **must** go to the bank.
- 2 *Must* and *have to* have the same basic meaning. We normally use *must* when the need comes from the speaker.
I'm hungry. I **must** have a sandwich.

We normally use *have to* when the authority comes from someone else.

I **have to** photocopy these things for the boss.

- 3 We use *have to* with *I, you, we*, and *they*.

We use *has to* with *he, she*, and *it*.

I **have to** go to the meeting.

She **has to** go to the meeting, too.

Must is the same for all subjects.

I **must** leave.

He **must** leave, too.

- 4 The negative forms of *have to* and *must* have different meanings.

Don't/Doesn't have to means that it is not obligatory or necessary.

You **don't have to** go to work tomorrow. It's Saturday.

Mustn't means that it is not allowed.

You **mustn't** park there. It's private property.

Lessons 61-64

Subject and object questions

- 1 In a *wh-* question with the question words, *What* and *Who*, the question word can be the subject or the object of the verb.
What do you do in the house?
Who does she meet at lunchtime?
- 2 When the question word is the object, we use the normal question structure.
What do you do in the house?
Who does she meet at lunchtime?
- 3 When the question word is the subject, we use a statement form of the verb.
What wakes you up in the morning?
Who cleans the windows?

should/shouldn't

- 1 We use *should/shouldn't* to give advice.
You **should** stay in bed if you're ill.
You **shouldn't** go to work.
- 2 *Should/Shouldn't* is a modal verb. It's the same for all subjects.
She **should** use a stepladder.
You **shouldn't** stand there.
- 3 *Should(n't)* is followed by an infinitive without *to*.
We **should** eat more fruit.
~~NOT We should to eat more fruit.~~

Grammar reference

Lessons 65–68

Passives

- 1 These two sentences have the same meaning:
Active voice: People take things to the recycling centre.
Passive voice: Things are taken to the recycling centre.
People is the subject of the active verb.
Things is the subject of the passive verb.
- 2 We use the passive voice when the action is more important than who or what did it.
Things are taken to the recycling centre.
We don't know (or need to know) who takes them.
- 3 We make the passive voice with the verb *to be* and a past participle. With a singular subject we use *is*.
With a plural subject we use *are*.
The model is painted.
The materials are recycled.
- 4 We can use the passive voice in any tense. To make different tenses we change the verb *to be*.
Past simple:
The model was painted last week.
The materials were recycled.

Lessons 69–72

Relative clauses

- 1 A relative clause gives more information about an item in a sentence.
I saw the woman.
I saw the woman who works in the Finance Department.
- 2 A relative clause starts with a relative pronoun. We use:
 - *who* with people
 - *which* with things and animals
 - *that* with people, things, and animals.There's the man who lives at number 22.
OR There's the man that lives at number 22.
Is this the computer which isn't working?
OR Is this the computer that isn't working?

- 3 A relative pronoun can be the subject or the object of a relative clause.

Is this the program? The program isn't working properly.

Is this the program which isn't working properly?

Quit the program. You're using the program.

Quit the program which you're using.

Relative pronouns are the same whether they are the subject or the object.

Lessons 73–76

Phrasal verbs

- 1 Some verbs in English have two parts. We call these phrasal verbs.
With some phrasal verbs the meaning is clear from the meanings of the two parts.
stand up
sit down
- 2 With some phrasal verbs we can't work out the meaning from the individual parts.
look after
break down

Present perfect: *for / since*

- 1 We use the present perfect when an activity started in the past and still continues in the present.
I've worked here for ten years. (And I still work here now.)
- 2 When the action finished in the past, we use the past simple.
I've worked here for ten years. (I still work here.)
Before that I worked in a factory for two years. (But I don't work there now.)

Grammar reference

3 In this context we often use time expressions with *for* or *since*.

for and *since*

We use *for* with a period of time

for six months
for nine hours
for a long time

We use *since* with a point of time.

since 1982
since February
since 10 o'clock

NOTE We can't use *since* with the past simple, because it means 'from a point in the past to now'.

I've been here since 10.30.

NOT I was here since 10.30.

Lessons 77-80

Adjectives with -ed or -ing

1 We use adjectives with *-ed* to describe how a person feels.

I'm **excited**. We're going on holiday tomorrow.

We were **frightened**. We watched a horror film.

2 We use adjectives with *-ing* to describe a person, place, or thing.

The holiday was **exciting**.

It was a **frightening** film.

would, second conditional

We use the conditional form *would* to talk about unlikely or unreal events.

On a perfect day I **would see** all my family.

If he had a year off, he **would write** a book.

Positive and negative statements

I		
He	'd	
She	(would)	retire.
It	wouldn't	go to work.
We	(would not)	live in the USA.
You		
They		

Questions

To make questions with *would*, we put *would* in front of the subject.

1 *yes/no* questions and short answers

Statement: You **would** retire.

Question: **Would** you retire? Yes, I would.
No, I wouldn't.

2 *wh-* questions

What **would** you do?

Where **would** she live?

Second conditional

1 We normally use *would* in a second conditional sentence.

Second conditionals describe unreal, unlikely, or imaginary situations.

If I had more time, I **would travel** round the world.

2 We use the past simple in the *if* clause and *would* in the main clause.

if clause main clause

If I **saw** a fire, I **would phone** the fire brigade.

NOT If I ~~would see~~ a fire, I ~~would phone~~ the fire brigade.

3 The *if* clause can come before or after the main clause. If it comes before the main clause, we put a comma at the end of the *if* clause.

If we won the lottery, we'd buy a boat.

We'd buy a boat if we won the lottery.

Audio scripts

1.2

Michael Zofia, this is my wife, Mia.
Zofia Pleased to meet you, ... sorry. What's your name again?
Mia It's Mia. M-I-A. Nice to meet you, too. Zofia.
Michael Zofia's Polish.
Mia Oh, really?
Zofia What about you, Mia? Are you Canadian, too?
Mia No, I'm not. I'm Chinese.
Zofia Oh, that's interesting.

3.1

Man OK, can I take some details then? Your first name, please?
Meryem It's Meryem. That's M-E-R-Y-E-M.
Man Uh-huh. Thank you. Now what's your surname?
Meryem It's Yilmaz.
Man How do you spell that, please?
Meryem It's Y-I-L-M-A-Z.
Man Thank you. And what's your date of birth, Ms Yilmaz?
Meryem The second of June 1980.
Man So that's oh-two, oh-six, eighty. And what's your nationality?
Meryem I'm sorry?
Man Nationality - where are you from?
Meryem Oh yes, of course. I'm from Turkey.
Man OK. Now, occupation. What do you do?
Meryem I'm a chemist.
Man I see. And are you married?
Meryem Yes, I am.
Man Have you got any children?
Meryem Yes, I have. Two - a girl and a boy.
Man Oh, how nice. Now, some contact details. What's your address, please?
Meryem It's number 55 Gleeson Road.
Man How do you spell Gleeson, please?
Meryem It's G-L-double-E-S-O-N.
Man Thank you. And is that here in London?
Meryem Yes, it is.
Man OK, and what's the postcode, please?
Meryem It's NW19 7GH.
Man Mmm-hm. And can I have a daytime telephone number, please?
Meryem Well, it's best to use my mobile number. It's oh double seven eight four, five nine three, one six two.
Man Thank you. And have you got an email address?
Meryem Yes, it's meryem.yilmaz@abc.com.
Man Thank you very much. Well I'll send you an email to confirm all these details and I'll see you soon.

8.3

1 Woman Hello, Abbey Dental Practice.
Caller Hello. My name's Tom Smith. I've got an appointment on the thirtieth of March at twenty past three, but I'm afraid I can't make it now.
Receptionist I see. Would you like to make a new appointment, Mr Smith?
Caller Yes, please.
Receptionist Can you come next Thursday in the afternoon?
Caller What date is that?
Receptionist It's the eighth of April.
Caller Yes, that's fine. What time?
Receptionist Well, I've got two o'clock or twenty to four.
Caller Oh, twenty to four, please.
Receptionist Fine. So your new appointment is at three forty on Thursday the eighth of April.
Caller Thank you very much. Goodbye.
Receptionist Goodbye.
2 Receptionist Hello, Lifestyle Therapy Centre.
Caller Hello. I've got an appointment on the twenty-seventh of January, but I'm afraid I can't make that now.
Receptionist I see. What time is your appointment?
Caller It's at ten to twelve.
Receptionist Ah, yes. Ms Clark?
Caller Yes, that's right. Could I make a new appointment, please?
Receptionist Yes, of course. Let me see. Can you come on the ninth of February in the morning?
Caller What day is that?
Receptionist It's a Monday.
Caller Yes, that's fine. What time?
Receptionist Well, I've got ten past ten or twenty-past ten.
Caller Oh, the later time, please.
Receptionist Fine. So your new appointment is at ten twenty on Monday the ninth of February.
Caller Thank you very much. Goodbye.
Receptionist Goodbye.

9.3

I get up at 7.30 and I have a shower. Then I get dressed and I make the bed. I have breakfast and I listen to the radio. Then I go to work.
I have lunch at one o'clock. After work, I sometimes go shopping or I play tennis with some friends. When I get home, I have dinner. I sometimes do some housework in the evening. I watch the news on TV and then I go to bed. I read a book for a quarter of an hour before I go to sleep.

11.1

At first life was great for me and my wife, Seema. We had two young children, and we both had good jobs. I earned a lot of money, so we had a big house.

But we weren't happy because I didn't spend much time with my family. I left home at 7.30 every morning and I didn't get home till eight o'clock in the evening. I travelled a lot in my job, too, so I was often away at weekends.

Then about five years ago, we were on holiday. It was beautiful, but I couldn't relax. I phoned my office every day. My wife wasn't happy about that.

One day we had a big argument about it, so I went for a walk on the beach. I saw a small house. There was a man in front of the house. When he saw me, he said: 'Hey! It's a beautiful day. Smile!' I stopped to talk to him.

He was a carpenter and he made furniture - beds, tables, chairs. So I said: 'Why aren't you working today?' And he said: 'Well, I made a table last week and I sold it this morning, so we've got enough money.'

That changed my life. When we got home, I left my job. We sold our big house in the suburbs and we moved to a small village in the country. I spend a lot more time with my family now. We soon knew everybody in the village, because Seema got a job as a teacher in the village school.

And me? I make furniture, but I'm not working today. I sold a table yesterday, so today I'm going fishing.

15.3

My parents were born in Chile, but I wasn't. They moved to England in the 1940s.

I was born in Liverpool in 1951. I didn't grow up in Liverpool. We moved to London when I was a baby and I grew up there.

I started school when I was five years old. I enjoyed school.

When I was sixteen I fell in love with a girl in my class. Her name was Charlotte. She was my first girlfriend and I thought she was gorgeous. I went out with her for about a year.

I left school in 1969 and I went to Birmingham University. I studied Physics there. I graduated in 1972 and I got a job with an engineering company.

My wife's name is Diana. She's Australian. I met her in Sydney. We were at a conference there.

We got married in 1980 and we had two children. Then in 1986 my company closed down and I lost my job. That was a hard time. I was thirty-five years old. I had a young family and no job.

I tried two or three other jobs, but they weren't very good. So in 2001 we moved to South Africa. We're still there now. I started my own engineering company and at the moment everything is OK.

Audio scripts

17.2

Clerk Hello. Can I help you?
Woman Yes. Could I have a ticket to Manchester, please – first class?
Clerk Are you travelling today?
Woman Yes.
Clerk Single or return?
Woman Single, please.
Clerk OK. That's fifty-two pounds, please.
Woman Thank you. What time is the next train, please?
Clerk The next train is at ten twenty-two. Change at Crewe.
Woman When is the next direct train?
Clerk It's at eleven thirty.
Woman Is that a fast train?
Clerk Yes, it is. It gets to Manchester at twelve forty-five.
Woman Oh, that's better. What platform does the eleven thirty train leave from?
Clerk Platform number six.
Woman Thank you very much.

19.1

1 Man ... Euston station, please.
Driver OK. The traffic's very bad this evening.
Man Yes, it is.
Driver What time's your train, then?
Man Seven forty-five.
Driver Where are you travelling to?
Man Scotland.
Driver So, is that seven forty-five the last train then?
Man Yes, it is.
Driver Right. Are you from Scotland?
Man Yes, I am.
Driver So you're going home, then.
Man Yes, I am. And my train goes in ten minutes. Are we nearly there?
Driver Yes, we are, but, like I said, the traffic's very bad. That's the station over there.
Man Oh, well, look. Can you drop me here? I can walk from here.
Driver Are you sure?
Man Yes, this is fine.
Driver OK. That's eight pounds fifty, then, please.
Man Here you are.
Driver Ten pounds. Thank you.
Man Keep the change.
Driver Thank you very much. Would you like a receipt?
Man No, thank you. I haven't got time.
Driver Goodbye.
Man Bye.

2 Woman Taxi! ... The Western Hotel, please.

Driver OK. It's chilly today.

Woman Oh yes, it is, but it's a lot colder in Berlin.

Driver So, is that where you're from – Germany?

Woman Yes, it is.

Driver Are you here on holiday, then?

Woman Yes, I am. I'm spending a few days here. It's a lovely city.

Driver Yes. Are you staying at the Western Hotel?

Woman Yes, I am.

Driver Do you like it there?

Woman Yes, it's very nice, thank you.

Driver Right, well. Here we are, the Western Hotel.

Woman Thank you.

Driver That's five pounds fifty, please.

Woman Here you are.

Driver Thank you very much. Enjoy your holiday.

Woman Thank you. Goodbye.

Driver Goodbye.

3 Man Taxi! ... the airport, please.

Driver OK.

Here we are, the airport. Which terminal do you want?

Man Oh, I don't know. It's probably on the ticket. Just a minute. No, I can't see it.

Well. Where are you flying to?

Driver To Milan.

Driver Oh, well you need International

Departures, then. That's Terminal 2.

Terminal 1 is for domestic flights.

Man Thank you.

Driver Well, there was only one terminal till three years ago. Then they opened the new one – Terminal 2.

Man Oh, I see.

Driver So are you from Italy, then?

Man No, I'm not. I'm from Egypt. I'm going to Italy on business.

Driver Oh, right. Well, here we are – Terminal 2.

Man Thank you.

Driver That's ten pounds fifty, please.

Man Here you are. Could I have a receipt, please?

Driver Certainly. There you go.

Man Thank you. Goodbye.

Driver Goodbye. Have a nice flight.

24.3

I come out of the station and I turn right. I go under the bridge and I walk down the hill. At the bottom of the hill there's a park on the left-hand side. I usually walk through the park. In the middle of the park there's a lake. There's a bridge over the lake, but I don't usually go over the bridge. I walk round the lake. It's very nice. When I come out of the park, I turn left and I walk past the sports centre. There's a supermarket on the right hand side. Opposite the supermarket there's a small street. There's a chemist's shop on the corner of the street. My office is at the end of the street.

25.2

1 Jules and Lidia: We sailed across the Pacific Ocean from South America to Asia.

2 Pedro: I flew across Africa. I started in the Canary Islands. I flew across the Sahara Desert to Lake Victoria and I finished at the Indian Ocean.

3 Timo and Selma: We cycled across Europe from north to south. We started in the north at the Arctic Ocean and we cycled down to the Mediterranean.

4 Akane: I ran across North America. I started in New York on the Atlantic Ocean and I ran across the USA and over the Rockies to San Francisco on the Pacific.

26.2

1 Man Do you want to join us for drink this evening, Andy?

Andy Thanks, but I'm going to have an early night.

2 Shana What shall we do this evening, Omar. There's nothing on telly.

Omar Why don't we watch a DVD?

Shana Yes. OK.

3 Man Are you busy this evening, Rosie?

Rosie Yes, I always go to the gym on Wednesdays.

4 Martina Bye. And don't be late this evening, Bruno.

Bruno Why not?

Martina Don't you remember? The meal with Audrey and James.

5 Bradley Can I use the computer this evening? I want to send some emails.

Woman Sure, Bradley.

6 Roy What shall we do this evening, Emma?

Emma Let's play tennis.

Roy Oh yes. Great idea.

Audio scripts

27.1

- Presenter** With me this morning are Rachel Morgan from Wales and Stefan Popko from Poland. In October they're going to take part in the Global Challenge race. So Rachel, what is this race?
- Rachel** We're going to sail round the world in a yacht.
- Presenter** When people normally sail round the world, they go from west to east.
- Rachel** Yes. That's because the wind goes from west to east. We're going to sail east to west against the wind.
- Presenter** So Stefan, where are you going to go?
- Stefan** We're going to sail down the Atlantic Ocean to Argentina. Then round the bottom of South America and across the Pacific Ocean to New Zealand. From there we're going to sail across the Indian Ocean to South Africa and then home.
- Presenter** Phew, and how long is that going to take?
- Stefan** We're going to travel over fifty-six thousand kilometres. That's going to take about a hundred and fifty days.
- Presenter** And how many people are going to be in the race?
- Rachel** There are going to be twelve yachts with eighteen people on each yacht. They're going to be from all over the world.
- Presenter** And how big are the yachts?
- Stefan** They're about twenty-two metres long, so with eighteen people it's going to be very tight. We can only take one kilo of luggage each.
- Presenter** One kilo? So the question is ... Why are you going to do it?
- Stefan** Because we want to.

29.2

- 1 **Woman** Hi, Imran. How's your new boss?
- Imran** Oh, she's OK.
- Woman** What does she look like?
- Imran** Well, she's quite slim. She isn't very tall.
- Woman** How old is she?
- Imran** I don't know - She's middle-aged.
- Woman** What's her hair like?
- Imran** Er, she's got medium-length hair.
- Woman** Straight?
- Imran** Oh, er, no. She's got wavy hair and it's very dark. She's quite pretty, actually.
- 2 The police are looking for a man in connection with the robbery. They describe the suspect as quite young, medium height and a bit overweight. He's got very curly, fair hair and blue eyes. He's also got a small moustache. Anyone who sees the man should phone the police on ...

32.2

- 1 **B** Excuse me.
- A** Yes. Can I help you?
- B** Yes. How much are these sports bags, please?
- A** The small ones are thirty-two euros and the large ones are fifty euros.
- B** Can I have a look at one of the small ones, please?
- A** Certainly. Here you are. We have them in black or green.
- B** It's very nice, but it's a bit small.
- A** Would you like to see one of the large ones?
- B** Yes, please.
- A** Here you are.
- B** Thank you. Yes. I think I prefer the large one. I'll take it.
- A** Black or green?
- B** Oh, the green one, please. How much is it again?
- A** Fifty euros. Anything else?
- B** No, thank you.
- A** That's fifty euros, then, please.
- 2 **A** Can I help you?
- B** Yes. You've got some earrings in the window. Can I have a look at them, please?
- A** Can you show me? These ones?
- B** Yes, and the ones next to them. Yes, those ones.
- A** OK. Here you are.
- B** How much are they, please?
- A** The gold ones are a hundred and fifteen euros and the silver ones are seventy-two euros.
- B** I like the gold ones, but I think I prefer the silver ones.
- A** Yes, they're very nice.
- B** Yes, ... but no. I'll take these ones, please.
- A** The gold ones?
- B** Yes.
- A** Anything else?
- B** No, thank you.
- A** That's a hundred and fifteen euros, then, please.

33.2

- 1 **A** What kind of programmes do you normally watch, Bob?
- B** Well, I don't watch TV a lot, but I always watch the news and the weather forecast. I like documentaries, too, you know like *Our World* and things like that.
- A** Do you watch any reality TV shows, like *The House*?
- B** No, I don't like them. What about you? Do you watch a lot of TV, Anna?
- A** Yes, I suppose, I do. I watch a lot of game shows. My favourite is *Lucky Chance*.
- B** Do you like soap operas?
- A** Yes. I always watch *Beacon Street*.
- B** Do you watch any sports programmes?
- A** No, I don't like sport.
- 2 **A** What sort of things do you watch on TV, Julie?
- B** I watch a lot of sitcoms, mostly American ones like *Jack and Jennie*. I love that. I like hospital dramas, too. *Emergency* is my favourite hospital drama.
- A** Do you watch the news?
- B** No, I never watch the news or documentaries or things like that. My parents always watch them, but I've got my own TV, so it's not a problem. What things do you usually watch on TV, Ivor?
- A** I usually watch films. I like chat shows, too - like *The Ronnie Melbourne Show*.
- B** Do you watch any soaps or sitcoms?
- A** No, I don't.

35.1

- This is the news with Martin West. The headlines: The heads of government of the EU countries have arrived in Budapest for their latest meeting. Thieves have stolen gold and a large number of diamonds from a bank in Paris. A tropical storm has hit the coast of South America. Strong winds have destroyed several villages. More than a hundred people have lost their lives. Two people have died in a fire at a factory in Glasgow. And some news has just come in. There has been a serious accident on the M5 motorway. A small plane has crashed into a bridge. The police have closed the motorway in both directions between junctions 5 and 7. We have no more information at the moment. The game show *The Box* has won the Independent award for the best radio programme of the year. Alan Jones, star of the TV sitcom *The Avenue* has married the programme's writer, Rajni Sekar. That's all the news for now. More on that accident on the M5 and all the other stories in our next bulletin at nine o'clock. And now the weather forecast ...

Audio scripts

37.2

- 1 A What's the matter?
B I've got a headache.
A Oh, dear. Here, I've got some painkillers.
B Thanks.
- 2 A What's wrong?
B I've hurt my wrist. It's swollen.
A Oh, yes, it is. Put some ice on it.
B Yes, that's good idea. Thanks.
- 3 A What's wrong?
B My arm itches.
A Oh, yes. You've got a rash on it. Here. I've got some cream for it.
B Oh, thanks.
- 4 A What's the matter?
B My nose is bleeding.
A Oh, yes. Here, I've got some tissues.
B Thank you.
- 5 A What's the matter?
B I've cut my hand.
A Oh, dear. Here, I've got some plasters.
B Thank you.
- 6 A What's wrong?
B I've burnt my finger.
A Oh, dear. Here, put it under the cold water.
B OK. Thanks.

38.3

- 1 A What have you done to your elbow, Kathy?
B I've sprained it.
A How did you do that?
B I fell downstairs.
A Really? When did it happen?
B On Thursday.
- 2 A Hi, John. What have you done to your leg?
B I've cut my knee.
A How did you do that?
B I dropped a knife on it in the kitchen. I was wearing shorts.
A Oh, dear. When did it happen?
B Yesterday morning.
- 3 A What have you done to your arm?
B I've bruised my elbow.
A How did you do that?
B I hit it against the car door.
A Ooh, that sounds bad. When did it happen?
B Two days ago.

40.2

- 1 Doctor Good morning. Now what seems to be the problem?
Patient My ear hurts.
Doctor I see. Which ear is it?
Patient My left ear.
Doctor When did it start?
Patient Oh, about two days ago now. Yes, it started on Monday morning.
Doctor Well, can I just have a look at it?
Hmm, yes, it's a bit red in there. I think you've got an infection.
Patient Oh, I see.
Doctor Take this medicine – one capsule four times a day.
Patient OK.
Doctor If it isn't any better by Friday, come back and see me.
Patient Yes, OK. Thank you. Goodbye.
Doctor Goodbye.
- 2 Doctor Good morning. Now what can I do for you?
Patient I've hurt my elbow.
Doctor Your right elbow?
Patient Yes.
Doctor I see. Can I just have a look at it?
Hmm, yes it's swollen. How did you hurt it?
Patient I banged it on a desk at work yesterday.
Doctor I see. Well, I think you've just bruised it, but we'd better get an X-ray. Take this letter to the hospital.
Patient OK.
Doctor In the meantime, put some ice on your elbow and take some painkillers.
Patient Yes, OK. Thank you. Goodbye.
Doctor Goodbye.

41.3

- A Are you ready to order?
B Yes. Can I have the grilled salmon, please?
A What kind of potatoes would you like – baked, boiled, or chips?
B Oh, boiled, please.
A And what would you like with that?
B Oh, can I have roasted vegetables, please?
A OK so that's grilled salmon with boiled potatoes and roasted vegetables.
B Thank you.

47.4

- 1 Peter: I usually go to the local shops in the town centre. It's friendlier and more personal. Last year I went to the supermarket for some wine, but the assistants didn't know anything except the price. Now I always go to a small wine shop in the town centre. It isn't as cheap as the supermarket, but the man there knows a lot about wine.
- 2 Susan: When I was a child there were a lot of local shops. There was a baker's, a butcher's, and a greengrocer's. But then they built a big supermarket near the town. Now all the small shops have gone. Well, you can understand it. They weren't as convenient as the supermarket. So we have to go to the supermarket now – at least the parking is easier there.
- 3 Anjit: I always shop at the supermarket because it's more convenient. The shops in the town are only open from nine to five thirty and I'm at work then. They're closed on Sundays, too. The supermarket's open longer hours and every day. And you can buy everything at one shop.
- 4 Birgit: I go to the local shops and the market because I think the food is fresher. If I go to the supermarket, the tomatoes are from South Africa and the lettuce is from India. Why do we bring food from the other side of the world when you can get it from a local farm?
- 5 Troy: I usually shop on the Internet because I can shop twenty-four seven. I order food and things on the Internet and the supermarket delivers everything to my house. It's the easiest way to shop and it's cheaper, too.

Audio scripts

48.2

- 1 **Customer** Excuse me. Have you got these shoes in a size five, please?
Assistant Just a minute. ... Yes, here you are.
Customer Thanks. I'll just try them on.
Assistant How are they?
Customer They're too loose. Have you got them in a smaller size?
Assistant Just a minute. No. I'm sorry. That's the smallest size.
Customer Oh, OK. Thanks anyway.
- 2 **Customer** Excuse me. Can I try this jumper on, please?
Assistant Yes. The changing rooms are over there.
Customer Thank you.
Voice *Later*
Assistant How is it?
Customer It isn't big enough. It's too tight on the chest. Have you got it in a larger size?
Assistant What size is that?
Customer Small.
Assistant Do you want to try a medium?
Customer Yes, please.
Assistant OK. Just a minute. Yes. Here you are.
Voice *Later*
Assistant Is that big enough?
Customer Yes. This is more comfortable, thanks. I'll take it.
Assistant Anything else?
Customer No, thanks.
Assistant OK. Well, if you'd just like to come to the till ...
- 3 **Customer** Excuse me. How much are these jeans, please?
Assistant They're sixty-two pounds.
Customer Can I try them on, please?
Assistant Sure. The changing rooms are over there.
Customer Thank you.
Voice *Later*
Assistant How are they?
Customer They're too short. Have you got them with a longer leg?
Assistant Just a minute. Yes. Here you are. Try these.
Customer Thanks.
Voice *Later*
Assistant Do they fit better?
Customer Yes. These are long enough, thanks. I'll take them.
Assistant Anything else?
Customer No, thanks.
Assistant That's sixty-two pounds then, please.

49.2

- 1 **A** That's nineteen pounds twenty, please.
B Oh, dear. I haven't got enough money. I've only got seventeen pounds.
- 2 **A** That's sixteen pounds and nine pence, please.
B Here you are.
A I'm sorry we don't take credit cards.
B Oh.
- 3 **A** We need to get a ticket at the machine.
B Yes, have you got any coins? I haven't.
A No, I haven't either. I've only got notes.
- 4 **A** This is nice.
B Yes, it is, but I can't buy it. I haven't had my salary this month yet.
- 5 **A** Oh, erm ...
B What's the matter?
A I can't remember my PIN. Is it six eight ... no six nine ... ?
- 6 **A** Thank you. That's two pounds change.
B Excuse me. I gave you a twenty-pound note. You've only given me change for ten pounds.
A Oh? Oh, yes, you're right. Sorry about that. Here you are.
- 7 **A** Dad, can I borrow some money?
B No, I lent you some money last week, and you haven't given it back.
A But I've spent it.
- 8 **A** What's this? I paid this bill last week.
B Well, they've sent your cheque back. You didn't sign it.

50.2

- 1 Hello, Kay. Your visitors phoned. Their plane was late, so they won't arrive before three o'clock. OK? Bye.
- 2 Good morning, Kay. This is Farida in Mexico. I've got the photographs. I'll email them to you today. Bye for now.
- 3 Hello, darling. I'm sorry, but I won't have time to book the theatre tickets. Can you do it? Thanks. Bye. Oh, I left the money for the cleaner in the kitchen.
- 4 Hi, Kay. This is John Morgan. I'm still in Paris, so I'm afraid I'll miss the meeting this afternoon. See you.
- 5 Hello, dear. It's your mother. I want to talk to you about your father's birthday. I'll phone you later. Bye. She isn't there. It's one of those answer phone things, you know.
- 6 Hello. This is the computer engineer. I'm sorry, but I won't have time to fix your computer today, so I'll fix it tomorrow morning. Bye.
- 7 Hey, Mum. I'm going to a party tonight, so I won't need a meal. Oh, and I've borrowed some money. It was in the kitchen. Hope that's OK.
- 8 Hello, Mrs Winter. It's Margaret, the cleaner. I can't find my money, and I won't be here next week. I'll be on holiday. So I really ...

53.3

- Beth** What do you like doing in your free time, Arnold?
Arnold I like water-skiing.
Beth Really?
Arnold Yes, and I like sailing, too.
Beth Do you like canoeing?
Arnold It's OK. I don't mind it.
Beth Have you tried scuba-diving?
Arnold No, I haven't. I like being on the water, but I don't like being under it.
Beth Oh, I see. What do you do when you aren't on the water?
Arnold Not a lot. I like relaxing in the garden, listening to music. You know - doing nothing really.
Beth Do you like doing DIY?
Arnold No, I don't. I'm not very good at it. Anyway, what about you? What do you like doing?
Beth Well, I like swimming.
Arnold Oh right. So have you tried scuba-diving, then?
Beth No, I haven't, but I'd like to. It looks great. So what else? Urm ... I like playing tennis.
Arnold Uh-huh. Are you any good?
Beth Yes, not bad. But I'm not really into exercise. I don't like going to the gym or jogging.
Arnold Oh, I see.
Beth I don't mind doing yoga, but I suppose most of all I like going out with friends. You know, going to restaurants, shopping, things like that.
Arnold Oh, right, so what's your favourite restaurant?

Audio scripts

56.2

- 1 **Receptionist** Good morning, the Angel Hotel.
You're speaking to Vicky. How may I help?
- Caller** Hello. I'd like to book a room, please.
- Receptionist** Certainly sir. When for?
- Caller** For the twenty-fifth of April, please for two nights.
- Receptionist** Two nights. And is it just one room?
- Caller** Yes, it is.
- Receptionist** Just one moment, sir. Yes, that's OK. How many guests is it for?
- Caller** Just myself.
- Receptionist** And would you like a single, a double, or a twin room, sir?
- Caller** A single, please. And I'd like a non-smoking room, if you have one, please.
- Receptionist** Yes, we do. So that's a single room - non-smoking - for two nights from the twenty-fifth of April.
- Caller** Yes, that's it.
- Receptionist** That will be sixty pounds per night.
- Caller** Does that include breakfast?
- Receptionist** No, I'm afraid it doesn't. That's for the room only, sir.
- Caller** OK.
- Receptionist** What name is it, please?
- Caller** It's Carlos Gonzalez.
- Receptionist** Is that G O N Z A L E Z?
- Caller** Yes.
- Receptionist** Thank you, and do you have a credit card to confirm the booking?
- Caller** Yes. It's ...
- 2 **Receptionist** Hotel Jumbo. Buon giorno.
- Caller** Oh, hello. I'd like to make a reservation, please.
- Receptionist** Certainly, madam. When for?
- Caller** For the sixth of November, please.
- Receptionist** How many nights?
- Caller** Just one night, please.
- Receptionist** One moment, please. And how many guests?
- Caller** Two - myself and a friend.
- Receptionist** And would you like a double or a twin room?
- Caller** A twin room, please.
- Receptionist** Yes, that's fine. We have a twin room for the sixth of November.
- Caller** We'd like a room with a balcony, if you have one, please.
- Receptionist** Erm. Yes, we do. So that's a twin room with a balcony for the sixth of November - just one night.
- Caller** Yes, that's right.
- Receptionist** That will be one hundred euros per night - bed and breakfast.
- Caller** Thank you.
- Receptionist** What name is it, please?
- Caller** It's Carol Mills. That's M I double L S.
- Receptionist** Thank you, and can I take a credit card number to confirm the booking?
- Caller** Yes, of course. It's ...

57.3

- Sayed** Hello Josh.
- Josh** Hi, Sayeed. How are you?
- Sayed** Fine, thanks. How was your day today?
- Josh** It was OK.
- Sayed** What did you do?
- Josh** Well, when I got to work I made a few phone calls and I sent some emails. I had a break at about eleven and then I went to a meeting.
- Sayed** Uh-huh.
- Josh** After lunch I made a couple of appointments for next week. Then I did some filing and I went on the Internet. So a normal day really. What about you, Sayeed? How was your day?
- Sayed** Oh, I worked at the weekend, so I had a day off today.
- Josh** Lucky you. So what did you do, then?

59.1

- 1 I live in a small town near Venice and I work in the city centre. I travel into the city by train. I live near the station so I don't have to drive. I take the train to the central station in Venice, and from the station I get the Vaporetto or waterbus to St Mark's Square. The journey takes about an hour and a half from my home to my office. It's OK, but in the summer the waterbus is very crowded with tourists.
- 2 I live in the suburbs of Kuala Lumpur in Malaysia. Every morning I have to travel into the city centre where I work. A few years ago the journey took over two hours because the traffic was very bad. But now we have a monorail metro. It's very fast and comfortable and I can read the newspaper or a book. Unfortunately, I don't live near the metro station, so I have to get a bus to the station. The journey only takes about an hour and a quarter now, so I don't have to get up very early.
- 3 I live and work in New York - in Manhattan - and I usually cycle to work. It's fast and it's good exercise, too. The journey takes about half an hour. I wear shorts or sweatpants and a sweatshirt and I have to take my clothes in a bag. Then I have a shower when I get to work. Problems? I can't cycle in winter, so I have to take the subway then, but that takes about forty-five minutes. Car drivers are the biggest problem. They open doors in front of you and things like that. So you have to be very careful.

64.3

- 1 **Assistant** Hello. Can I help you?
- Customer** Yes, I bought this jumper at the weekend, but it's got a hole in it.
- Assistant** Oh, yes. I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?
- Customer** Yes, please.
- Assistant** Just a moment. ... Here you are. This one's OK.
- Assistant** Thank you.
- 2 **Assistant** Hello. Can I help you?
- Customer** Yes, I bought this kettle two days ago, but there's something wrong with it.
- Assistant** I see. What's the problem?
- Customer** It's leaking.
- Assistant** Oh? I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?
- Customer** No, thank you. Can I have a refund, please?
- Assistant** Yes, of course. Have you got the receipt?
- Customer** Yes. Here you are.
- Assistant** Thank you.
- 3 **Assistant** Hello. Can I help you?
- Customer** Yes, I bought this clock radio on Monday, but it's damaged. Look.
- Assistant** Oh, yes. I'm sorry about that. Would you like to exchange it?
- Customer** Yes, please.
- Assistant** Just a moment. ... I'm sorry that was the last one. We should have some more next week.
- Customer** Oh, well can I have a refund then, please?
- Assistant** OK. Have you got the receipt?
- Customer** Yes. Here you are.
- Assistant** Thank you.
- 4 **Assistant** Hello. Can I help you?
- Customer** Yes, I bought this CD yesterday, but it's scratched.
- Assistant** I see. Would you like to exchange it?
- Customer** Yes, please.
- Assistant** Have you got the receipt?
- Customer** Yes. Here you are.
- Assistant** Just a moment, then, please ... Here you are. This one should be OK.
- Customer** Thank you.

Audio scripts

65.3

- Reporter** I'm at the recycling centre, and I'm talking to Arthur Collins. What materials can people recycle here?
- Arthur** We recycle a lot of materials – glass, paper, plastic, metal. We collect wood, too, and cardboard.
- Reporter** I see. What things do most people bring to the recycling centre?
- Arthur** Most people recycle newspapers and magazines, glass bottles – and plastic bottles, too.
- Reporter** I can see some metal cans over there.
- Arthur** Yes, people bring cans – and cardboard boxes, too.
- Reporter** Are those things easy to recycle?
- Arthur** Yes, they are. The biggest problem is with things like televisions and computers, because they're made of a lot of different materials – plastic, glass, rubber, metal. Some of the metals are very expensive, like silver and gold.
- Reporter** I see. So what do you ...

66.2

The model in this picture was built one sixth of normal size. I can't show you the model, because it was destroyed for a TV programme. It was made from wood and paper. The buildings and streets were built first. Then the small things were added. Children's toys were used for things like bicycles and plants. Shop signs were painted by hand. These small things are very important. When the model was seen on TV, people thought it was real. The street was used in a history programme. It was shown on TV last year.

67.1

- 1 I'm from Thailand. My favourite festival is Loy Krathong. It's celebrated at the end of the rainy season. It's to say thank you for the water. Small boats are made from banana leaves. A candle, flowers, and coins are put in the boat. In the evening, people take their boats to the nearest river, canal, or lake. The candles are lit and the boats are pushed out onto the water. It looks really beautiful. We believe that our bad luck is taken away by the boats, so we feel happy.
- 2 The Day of the Dead is one of the biggest festivals in Mexico. It's celebrated on the second of November every year. It's when dead friends and relatives are remembered. Big models of skeletons are made from paper, wood, and cardboard. These skeletons are carried through the streets. Small skeletons are eaten, too – but these are made from sugar and bread. They're sold in shops and markets. In their houses, people have flowers, candles, food, and photographs of their dead friends and relatives. We remember the good times with them.
- 3 My favourite festival here in Russia is Maslenitsa. It's celebrated at the end of winter. Winters are very long and cold in Russia, so we're all happy when it finishes. For the festival a model of a woman is made from straw. It's dressed in women's clothes. This is Lady Maslenitsa. There are lots of parties and people visit their relatives. And – this is the best part for the children – they eat lots of pancakes. They're delicious. At the end of the week, Lady Maslenitsa is burnt and we say goodbye to winter.

69.3

- A** Right, what's open on your desktop at the moment?
- B** It's a file.
- A** Well, save that.
- B** OK. I've saved it.
- A** What program are you using?
- B** Word.
- A** OK. Quit that.
- B** Right. I've done that.
- A** Good. Now can you see the icon for your email?
- B** Yes, I can.
- A** Fine. Click on it.
- B** OK. I've done that.
- A** Is your email window open now?
- B** Yes. It's the inbox.
- A** All right. Now scroll down to the email with the attachment and click on it.
- B** OK. The email is open now.
- A** Right. Now go to the menu bar and click on Edit. You should see the menu ...
- B** Well, I've done all that.
- A** Good. Now click OK and restart your computer. It should be fine.

72.2

- 1 Katrin** John. I need something for my hairdryer. What do you call the thing that you put in the wall?
- John** A plug.
- Katrin** A plug?
- John** Yes. Do you want a plug for your hairdryer?
- Katrin** No, it's got a plug, but it's isn't the plug that you use here in England.
- John** Oh, I see. You need an adaptor.
- Katrin** An adaptor. Yes. Have you got an adaptor for this plug?
- John** No. I'm sorry. But why don't you use Sally's hairdryer and we can get an adaptor tomorrow.
- Katrin** Oh, OK.
- 2 Katrin** This is a photo of my brother.
- Sally** What does your brother do?
- Katrin** Oh ... what do you call someone who builds things?
- Sally** Do you mean someone who builds houses? A builder?
- Katrin** No. He builds offices, bridges, and things like that.
- Sally** Oh, he's a civil engineer.
- Katrin** Sorry?
- Sally** A civil engineer. It's two words: Civil. That's C-I-V-I-L, and then the next word – engineer.
- Katrin** Oh, right, a civil engineer.
- 3 Katrin** What do you call the part where you type on a computer?
- John** The keyboard. The things that you press are the 'keys', so the whole thing is a keyboard.
- Katrin** How do you spell that?
- John** K-E-Y-B-O-A-R-D.
- Katrin** Keyboard. OK.

73.2

- 1 **A** Hello, Mike.
- B** Oh, hi, Mary. Come in. Please sit down.
- 2 **A** Why are you putting on your jacket?
- B** I'm going out.
- 3 **A** Is that your neighbours' dog?
- B** Yes, I always look after it when they go away.
- 4 **A** Have you switched off your mobile?
- B** I'm looking for it now. I can't find it.
- 5 **A** Can you stand up, please? I can't find my keys.
- B** Just a minute. I'll switch on the light. There they are.

74.2

- 1 **A** How long have you worked here?
- B** I've been here for nearly three years.
- 2 **A** How long have you been a policeman?
- B** I've been in the police since 2003.
- 3 **A** How long were you and Jim married?
- B** Only three years.
- 4 **A** Have we lived in France for three years or four years?
- B** We've been here for three years.
- 5 **A** Did you work at the bank for a long time?
- B** I worked there for eight years.

Audio scripts

75.1

Paul Helen, it's good to see you.
Helen Yes, and you, Paul. How are you?
Paul Great, thanks. And you?
Helen Fine. Are you married?
Paul Yes, I've been married for nine years and we've got three children.
Helen Oh, lovely. What do you do? Didn't you get a job at a bank after university?
Paul Yes, I'm still there, but I'm a manager now.
Helen Where do you live?
Paul In Manchester. We've been there for three years. We've got a nice house in the suburbs and Georgina – that's my wife – teaches at a local school. What about you?
Helen Oh, well, when I left university, I got a job with an insurance company, but I didn't like it, so I was only there for six months.
Paul What did you do?
Helen I travelled to Australia, south-east Asia, and Canada.
Paul Great! What did you do there?
Helen I worked on farms, in hotels, in shops – and I met my husband! His name was Troy and he played the trumpet in a band.
Paul Wow. Cool.
Helen Yes, I was a singer with the band for a couple of years. It was fun but then I wanted to do the normal thing – get a real job, buy a house, have children. But Troy didn't.
Paul So, what happened?
Helen We got divorced and I came back to England. I've been back for four years now. I work for a computer company.
Paul In London?
Helen Yes. I share a flat with a friend there.
Paul I always wanted to travel and play the guitar in a band.
Helen Yes, but you've got a good job, a nice house, a family. You've got all the things that I've always wanted.
Paul But you've done all the things that I wanted to do. That's life, eh?

77.2

1 **A** I've got an interview tomorrow.
B Are you worried?
A Yes, I am.
2 **A** Oh, no!
B What's the matter?
A I'm annoyed. My laptop isn't working.
3 **A** Yawn!
B Are you tired?
A Yes, I am.
B Have you had a busy day?
A No, I was at a party last night.
4 **A** I'm going to get a pizza. I'm hungry. I didn't have any lunch.
5 **A** There's nothing on TV. I'm really bored.
6 **A** Our son has won a school prize.
B That's great. I bet you feel proud.
A Yes, I do.
7 **B** Hi, Mark. How are you?
A I'm fine. I had a day off today. I feel really relaxed.
8 **A** Just a minute. When's the meeting – this week or next? ... I'm confused!

81.2

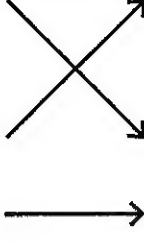
Sarah It's true, Ryan. Russell didn't know anything about Anna and Starlight Properties.
Ryan Anna and what? I'm talking about the car. He didn't put any petrol in it.
Cindy Yes, the car just stopped in the middle of the road. It was very embarrassing.
Ryan And when we finally got to the solicitor's, they were closed. You stupid boy!
Peter Closed? So you didn't sign the contract?
Cindy No, we didn't.
Jordan You haven't sold the café?
Ryan No, we haven't. And it's all Russell's fault.
Lucy Oh, that's great! It's wonderful news!
Cindy Wonderful? What are you talking about, Lucy?
Peter Sit down. We'll tell you all about it.
Voice Later ...
Jordan So, that's it.
Ryan That's amazing. Thank you very much. You've saved The Coffee Shop.
Sarah Well Russell helped, too. You didn't get to the solicitor's because he didn't put any petrol in the car.
Cindy Oh, yes. You clever boy, Russell. Well done.
Russell Thanks, Mum.
Ryan Oh, I don't believe it!

Irregular verbs

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bet	bet	bet
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
buy	bought	bought
can	could/was able to	been able to
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	been/gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lead /lɪd/	led	led
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
let	let	let
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read /rɪd/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Pronunciation chart

iː /siː/ see	ɪ /sɪt/ sit	ʊ /pʊt/ put	uː /tuː/ too	ɪə /nɪə/ near	eɪ /deɪ/ day		
e /bed/ bed	ə /əbaʊt/ about	ɜː /tɜːn/ turn	ɔː /sɔː/ saw	ʊə /pjuə/ pure	ɔɪ /bɔɪ/ boy	əʊ /gəʊ/ go	
æ /kæt/ cat	ʌ /ʌp/ up	ɑː /fɑːðə/ father	ɒ /hɒt/ hot	eə /ðeə/ there	aɪ /maɪ/ my	aʊ /haʊ/ how	
p /pen/ pen	b /bæd/ bad	t /tiː/ tea	d /dɔː/ door	tʃ /tʃeə/ chair	dʒ /dʒæm/ jam	k /kæn/ can	g /get/ get
f /faɪv/ five	v /væn/ van	θ /θɪn/ thin	ð /ðə/ the	s /sɪt/ sit	z /zuː/ zoo	ʃ /ʃuː/ shoe	ʒ /ʒuːzəli/ usually
m /mæn/ man	n /nɒt/ not	ŋ /sɪŋ/ sing	h /hæt/ hat	l /leg/ leg	r /red/ red	w /wet/ wet	j /jes/ yes

